SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide



PROCESS, POWER & MARINE

Version 2011 R1 (9.1)

May 2012

DSP3D-PE-200019K



Copyright

Copyright © 1999-2012 Intergraph Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Including software, file formats, and audiovisual displays; may be used pursuant to applicable software license agreement; contains confidential and proprietary information of Intergraph and/or third parties which is protected by copyright law, trade secret law, and international treaty, and may not be provided or otherwise made available without proper authorization from Intergraph Corporation.

Portions of this software are owned by Spatial Corp. © 1986-2010. All Rights Reserved.

U.S. Government Restricted Rights Legend

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth below. For civilian agencies: This was developed at private expense and is "restricted computer software" submitted with restricted rights in accordance with subparagraphs (a) through (d) of the Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights clause at 52.227-19 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations ("FAR") and its successors, and is unpublished and all rights are reserved under the copyright laws of the United States. For units of the Department of Defense ("DoD"): This is "commercial computer software" as defined at DFARS 252.227-7014 and the rights of the Government are as specified at DFARS 227.7202-3.

Unpublished - rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States.

Intergraph Corporation P.O. Box 240000 Huntsville, AL 35813

Terms of Use

Use of this software product is subject to the End User License Agreement ("EULA") delivered with this software product unless the licensee has a valid signed license for this software product with Intergraph Corporation. If the licensee has a valid signed license for this software product with Intergraph Corporation, the valid signed license shall take precedence and govern the use of this software product. Subject to the terms contained within the applicable license agreement, Intergraph Corporation gives licensee permission to print a reasonable number of copies of the documentation as defined in the applicable license agreement and delivered with the software product for licensee's internal, non-commercial use. The documentation may not be printed for resale or redistribution.

Warranties and Liabilities

All warranties given by Intergraph Corporation about equipment or software are set forth in the EULA provided with the software or applicable license for the software product signed by Intergraph Corporation, and nothing stated in, or implied by, this document or its contents shall be considered or deemed a modification or amendment of such warranties. Intergraph believes the information in this publication is accurate as of its publication date.

The information and the software discussed in this document are subject to change without notice and are subject to applicable technical product descriptions. Intergraph Corporation is not responsible for any error that may appear in this document.

The software discussed in this document is furnished under a license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of this license. No responsibility is assumed by Intergraph for the use or reliability of software on equipment that is not supplied by Intergraph or its affiliated companies. THE USER OF THE SOFTWARE IS EXPECTED TO MAKE THE FINAL EVALUATION AS TO THE USEFULNESS OF THE SOFTWARE IN HIS OWN ENVIRONMENT.

Intergraph is not responsible for the accuracy of delivered data including, but not limited to, catalog, reference and symbol data. Users should verify for themselves that the data is accurate and suitable for their project work.

Trademarks

Intergraph, the Intergraph logo, PDS, SmartPlant, FrameWorks, I-Convert, I-Export, I-Sketch, SmartMarine, IntelliShip, INtools, ISOGEN, MARIAN, SmartSketch, SPOOLGEN, SupportManager, and SupportModeler are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intergraph Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries. Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. ACIS is a registered trademark of SPATIAL TECHNOLOGY, INC. Infragistics, Presentation Layer Framework, ActiveTreeView Ctrl, ProtoViewCtl, ActiveThreed Ctrl, ActiveListBar Ctrl, ActiveSplitter, ActiveToolbars Ctrl, ActiveToolbars Plus Ctrl, and ProtoView are trademarks of Infragistics, Inc. Incorporates portions of 2D DCM, 3D DCM, and HLM by Siemens Product Lifecycle Management Software III (GB) Ltd. All rights reserved. Gigasoft is a registered trademark, and ProEssentials a trademark of Gigasoft, Inc. VideoSoft and VXFlexGrid are either registered trademarks of ComponentOne LLC 1991-2009, All rights reserved. Oracle, JD Edwards, PeopleSoft, and Retek are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Tribon is a trademark of AVEVA Group plc. Alma and act/cut are trademarks of the Alma company. Other brands and product names are trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Preface	7
SmartPlant 3D Documentation Set	7
Documentation Comments	9
What's New in the Installation Guide	10
Welcome to SmortPlant 2D	44
Third-Party Integration	13
Working in an Integrated Environment	15
Internationalization	17
SmartPlant 3D Hardware and Software Recommendations	19
Smart Diant 2D Database Server Decommondations	
SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations	ا ∠ 22
Silian Flant 5D Workstation Recommendations	22 26
Installation Checklist	20 27
Disk Partitioning Guidelines	27 27
SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations	
Concurrent Users	29
Proiect Size Estimates	29
Modeling (Detail Design) Workstation Sizing	30
System Administrator Workstation Sizing	31
Database Server Sizing	31
Global Workshare Configuration Distribution Server Sizing	33
Interference Checking (IFC) Server Sizing	33
Batch Server Sizing	33
File Server Sizing	34
License Server and Name Generator Server Sizing	34
License Server	34
Silent Installation	35
List of User-Selectable Features	36
Silent Installation for Service Packs	38
Setting Up the Database	39
Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008	39
Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008	39
Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Database Server Only)	41
Configure the Distributed COM Users Group	42
Loading Prerequisite Software on the Database Server	43
Install Microsoft .NET Framework (Database Server)	43
Installing and Configuring Microsoft SQL Server 2008	44
Install Microsoft SQL Server 2008	44
Install any Required SQL Server 2008 Upgrades	47
Verity Automatic Startup of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Services	47

Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service	47
Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008	48
Create a SQL Server 2008 Database Alert	49
SQL Server Port Assignments	51
SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility	52
Change Database Collation	53
Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software	55
Install Oracle Database Server Software 11g Release 2	56
Initialize the Oracle Database	57
Configure Oracle Networking Components	60
Oracle Database Port Assignments	60
Verify Automatic Startup of Oracle Database Services	61
Create the Oracle Streams Tablespace	62
Create the Oracle Streams Administrator	62
Monitoring the Databases	63
Disk I/O	63
Disk Usage	64
Install Smart 3D Reference Data	66
Configure Network Shares	67
Move Custom DLLs to SharedContent Folder	69
Installing the Name Generator Service	71
Install the Name Generator Service	72
Configure the Name Generator Service	74
Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 2008 Server	79
Setting Up the Client	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments	83 83
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only)	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Visto or Windows 7	83 83 84 85 85 85 89 89
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)	
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)	83 83 84 85 85 85 89 89 89 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7	83 83 84 85 85 85 89 89 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication	83 83 84 85 85 85 89 89 89 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 89 90 90 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 90 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 91 95 95
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 91 95 95
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication. Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication. Instructions for Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)	83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 91 95 95 95
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication. Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication. Instructions for Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only). Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7	83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 96 96
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 7	83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 96 96 97
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 96 96 97
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	83 84 85 85 89 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 96 96 97 100 100
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Vindows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 7 Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client Install Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC	83 83 84 85 85 89 89 90 90 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 95 95 96 97 100 100
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication Instructions for Windows 7 SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Vista and Windows 7 Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Vista and Windows 7 Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client Install Microsoft .NET Framework Install Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Ubdate	83 83 84 85 85 89 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 95 95 96 97 100 100 101
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	83 84 85 85 89 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 91 95 95 95 95 95 96 97 100 100 100 101
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	83 83 84 85 85 89 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90
Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3	83 83 84 85 85 89 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90

Register SQL Server 2008	
Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software	
Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2	
Configure the Oracle Client	
Verify Startup of Oracle Client Services	107
Install Smart 3D Client Software	109
Install Service Packs	112
Configure for Large Model Drawing Generation	113
Configure for an Integrated Environment	115
Register Solid Edge .DLL File	115
Integrating with PDS	116
Install PDS Export Tools	116
Install PDS Data Access	117
Install Smart 3D PDS Project Translators	118
Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID	
Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008	
Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (XP Client)	121
Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (Vista and	100
Windows 7)	
File Server Sizing	130
Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (Vista and	400
Windows 7)	
Register the Site Database for P&ID Access	
Viewing 2D Model Date	
Install SmartDlant Schoma Component	135
Lising Programming Resources	130
Install Programming Resources	130
Install the SmartPlant 3D Command Wizard	139
Install the SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard	139
Configuring the Databases	141
Upgrading Databases	143
Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for SQL	143
Create the Model and Reports Databases for SQL	145
Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for Oracle	147
Create the Model and Reports Databases for Oracle	150
Assign Access Permissions	152
Server-Based Interference Checking (Database Detect)	153
Install Database Interference Detection Service	154
Configure Interference Service Properties.	
Start the Database Interference Detection Service	
Set IFC Permission Requirements	
Create IFC Permission Group Folder and Permission Group	
Set IFC Permissions	158
Check Database Interferences	159
Interference Server Settings Dialog Box	160
Database Detect Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box)	160
Status Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box)	162

Batch Service	163
Installing Intergraph Batch Services	
Starting and Stopping Batch Services	167
Granting Jobs Access to the Desktop	168
Granting Batch Service Privileges	169
Configure Account Mappings	
Create Batch Services Queues	
Making Other Batch Servers Available	
Configuring the Batch Services Server for Drawings Tasks	172
Getting Started	173
Update Site Database Name and Path	173
Open SmartPlant 3D	
Configure Your Tasks	
Define Your Workspace	
Save Session Files	177
Application Maintenance	179
Modify or Repair SmartPlant 3D	
Remove Smart 3D Software	
Recommendation for Database Monitoring	185
Server Monitoring	
Results Analysis	
Troubleshooting the Software	191
User Assistance	
Customer Assistance	
Common Acronyms	195
Appendix: Install and Configure Oracle Software	197
Install and Configure Oracle Server Software	
Oracle Server Configuration	
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Server Software Installation	
Delete the Default Oracle Database	201
Create the SmartPlant 3D Oracle 11g Database	202
Oracle Post-Installation Requirements	207
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Installation	208
Index	213

Preface

This document is an installation guide for SmartPlant 3D reference data and product software. The purpose of this document is to explain how to install and configure SmartPlant 3D and all necessary prerequisite software.

IMPORTANT This document does not cover basic Windows Server 2008, Windows 7, Windows XP Professional, Windows Vista, Oracle®, or Microsoft SQL Server operation. Refer to those products' printed documentation for basic operation information.

Intergraph® gives you permission to print as many copies of this document as you need for non-commercial use at your company. You cannot print this document for resale or redistribution outside your company.

NOTE For information on SmartPlant 3D commands, refer to the SmartPlant 3D on-line Help. You can find the most recent guides and on-line Help at Intergraph's eCustomer support site: https://crmweb.intergraph.com/ecustomer_enu/.

SmartPlant 3D Documentation Set

SmartPlant 3D documentation is available as Adobe PDF files. The content is the same as online Help. To access these PDF documents, click **Help > Printable Guides** in the software.

The documentation set is divided into four categories:

- Administrative guides contain information about installing, configuring, customizing, and troubleshooting SmartPlant 3D.
- User's guides provide command reference and how-to information for working in each SmartPlant 3D task.
- Reference data guides define the reference data workbooks. Not all tasks have reference data.
- ISOGEN guides

Administrative Guides

SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide - Provides instructions on installing and configuring the software.

Project Management User's Guide - Provides instructions for setting up the databases, creating permission groups, backing up and restoring project data, assigning access permissions to the model, defining and managing locations for Global Workshare, and version migration.

SmartPlant 3D Global Workshare Guide - Provides instructions for setting up the software and the databases to work in a workshare environment.

SmartPlant 3D Interference Checking Guide - Provides information on installing, configuring, and using the interference detection service.

SmartPlant 3D Integration Reference Guide - Provides information about installing, configuring, and using SmartPlant 3D in an integrated environment.

SmartPlant 3D Interpreting Human Piping Specifications - Provides information about how to interpret human piping specifications so that you can create the corresponding piping specification in the software.

SmartPlant 3D Export to PDMS - Provides information about how to export model data from SmartPlant 3D to PDMS. Specific guidelines relating to best practices and known limitations of the export functionality are also included.

SmartPlant 3D Point Cloud Reference - Provides information for referencing point cloud files provided by point cloud vendors in SmartPlant 3D.

SmartPlant 3D Troubleshooting Guide - Provides information on how to resolve errors that you may encounter in the software by documenting troubleshooting tips, error messages, and **To Do List** messages.

SmartPlant 3D Plant Design System (PDS) Guide - Provides all information needed to use PDS with SmartPlant 3D. Topics include referencing active PDS projects in SmartPlant 3D, exporting PDS data and importing that data into SmartPlant 3D, and converting PDS reference data to SmartPlant 3D reference data.

SmartPlant 3D/SmartMarine 3D Programmer's Guide - Provides information about custom commands, naming rules, and symbol programming. This document is delivered, if you install the Programming Resources, to the *[Product Folder]*\3D\Programming\Help folder.

User's Guides

Catalog User's Guide - Provides information about viewing, editing, and creating reference data and select lists (codelists).

Common User's Guide - Provides information about defining workspaces, manipulating views, and running reports.

Electrical User's Guide - Provides information about routing electrical cable, cableway, cable tray, and conduit.

Equipment and Furnishings User's Guide - Provides information about placing equipment.

Grids User's Guide - Provides instructions for creating coordinate systems, elevation grid planes, vertical grid planes, radial cylinders, radial planes, grid arcs, and grid lines.

Hangers and Supports User's Guide - Provides instructions on placing piping, duct, and cableway supports in the model.

HVAC User's Guide - Provides instructions for routing HVAC duct.

Orthographic Drawings User's Guide - Provides information about creating and managing orthographic drawings.

Piping Isometric Drawings User's Guide - Provides information about creating and managing piping isometric drawings.

Piping User's Guide - Provides instructions for routing pipe and placing valves, taps, and pipe joints.

Reports User's Guide - Provides information about creating and managing spreadsheet reports.

Space Management User's Guide - Provides instructions for placing space objects such as areas, zones, interference volumes, and drawing volumes in the model.

Structural Analysis User's Guide - Provides instructions for defining loads, load cases, load combinations, and the importing and exporting of analytical data.

Structure User's Guide - Provides instructions for placing structural members such as: beams, columns, slabs, openings, stairs, ladders, equipment foundations, and handrails.

Systems and Specifications User's Guide - Provides instructions for creating systems and selecting which specifications are available for each system type.

Reference Data Guides

SmartPlant 3D 2D Symbols User's Guide - Provides command reference information and procedural instructions for creating 2D symbols used to represent collars, clips, profiles, brackets, and other items.

SmartPlant 3D 2D Symbols Reference Data Guide - Provides information about the two-dimensional symbols used in all tasks.

Drawings and Reports Reference Data Guide - Provides information about reports reference data.

Electrical Reference Data Guide - Provides information about electrical cable, cableway, cable tray, and conduit reference data.

Electrical 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the cable tray and conduit 3D symbols that are available.

Equipment and Furnishings Reference Data Guide - Provides information about equipment reference data.

Equipment 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the equipment, equipment component, design shapes, and design aides 3D symbols that are available.

Hangers and Supports Reference Data Guide - Provides information about hangers and supports reference data.

Hangers and Supports 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the hanger and support 3D symbols that are available.

Hangers and Supports SmartPart Symbols Reference - Provides information about the hanger and support SmartPart symbols that are available.

HVAC Reference Data Guide - Provides information about HVAC reference data.

HVAC 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the HVAC 3D symbols that are available.

SmartPlant 3D Reference Data Guide - Provides instructions about the Bulkload utility, codelists, and the reference data common to several disciplines.

Piping Reference Data Guide - Provides information about piping reference data including piping specifications, piping specification rules, piping parts, and piping symbols.

Piping 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the piping 3D symbols that are available.

Space Management Reference Data Guide - Provides information about space management reference data.

Structure Reference Data Guide - Provides information about structural reference data.

Structure 3D Symbols Reference - Provides information about the stair, ladder, footings, and equipment foundation 3D symbols that are available.

ISOGEN Guides

Symbol Keys Reference Guide - Provides information about the symbol keys for isometric drawings. This guide is from Alias, the makers of ISOGEN.

Documentation Comments

We welcome comments or suggestions about this documentation. You can send us an email at: PPMdoc@intergraph.com.

Documentation updates for supported software versions are available from *eCustomer https://crmweb.intergraph.com*.

What's New in the Installation Guide

The following changes have been made to the installation guide.

Version 2011 R1 (9.1)

- SmartPlant 3D now uses Intergraph Batch Services to help you run large, time-consuming operations on a separate computer or during off hours, leaving your workstations available for other tasks. For more information, see *Installing Intergraph Batch Services* (on page 163). (P3 CP: 169878)
- A new utility, **ConfigureDrawingsBatch**, must be run each time mapped account settings are changed. For more information, see *Configuring the Batch Services Server for Drawings Tasks* (on page 172).

Welcome to SmartPlant 3D

The Intergraph SmartPlant family of process industry solutions is an open line of discipline-specific software tools that provide an integrated solution for the entire plant life cycle. SmartPlant provides knowledge-based, intuitive, easy-to-use, accessible, flexible, and data-driven tools that support global workflows. The software enables users to create logical and physical definitions of the plant model and enables access to plant data from conceptual design through decommissioning.

SmartPlant is the fulfillment of the Intergraph vision to speed and improve the creation of information and provide this data to multiple users at any moment in the appropriate form. Workflows are compressed, reducing production time, lowering costs, enhancing global execution, and extending the life and usability of plant information.

SmartPlant 3D

SmartPlant 3D uses Web and Windows technologies to provide a familiar interface for the user to produce step- changes in three-dimensional detailed plant design, procurement, construction, and operational system performance. This new data-centric solution approach generated by SmartPlant 3D synchronizes key elements of integration and relationships.

- Integration SmartPlant 3D allows multiple engineering disciplines to work concurrently and in real-time against relational databases.
- Relationships SmartPlant 3D's relationship manager controls design changes across disciplines, which in turn establishes and maintains appropriate behaviors among structures, equipment, and systems.

SmartPlant 3D understands that plant design encompasses more than just 3D modeling. As such, SmartPlant 3D is designed to integrate the SmartPlant Product Model with Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP), Operations and Maintenance (O&M), and Front End Engineering and Design (FEED). Traditionally, the only way to extract and load data from one application to another was through neutral format text files.

Session files are used by SmartPlant 3D to empower users to define their own view of objects in the database. The Project Management task enables users to administer and restrict user permissions to areas within the design catalog and the plant model. The optimistic locking feature in SmartPlant 3D makes it possible for users to work concurrently in the same environment and with the same component, whether it's specific to plant design or associated with the relationship of the components themselves. Additional features, such as angle locking and interference checking, make SmartPlant 3D the ideal software to manage system performance and maintain design intent.

SECTION 2 Third-Party Integration

Equipment Modeling Capability

Whether using one of the delivered symbols or a custom symbol that you define yourself, symbols are a key building block used to create your model. The software uses two basic types of symbols: 2D and 3D.

The 2D symbols are used to represent structural member cross-sections. Two-dimensional symbols for structural cross-sections are delivered in the [*Product*

Folder]\SharedContent\CrossSections folder. You can use any of the defined cross-sections or define your own cross-sections using the software's 2D Symbols application. This application allows you to define different representations for the cross-section using layers. You can also define variables to drive the dimensions of the cross-section symbol.

An extensive library of 3D symbols is delivered in the various subfolders located in the [*Product Folder*]\SharedContent folder on the reference data server computer. The 3D symbols are used to represent equipment, hangers, HVAC components, piping components, and so forth in your model. You can also create custom three- dimensional symbols using the SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard or Solid Edge®.

The SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard allows you to create and customize three-dimensional symbols that fit your company or project. The wizard produces a Visual Basic® project for building the symbol ports and graphics, and generates an Excel workbook for bulkloading the symbol data into the Catalog database.

While not prerequisite software, you can also use Solid Edge with SmartPlant 3D. With Solid Edge, you can build intelligent equipment reference data libraries of base parts that can be placed into the SmartPlant 3D model. An entire catalog of standard equipment can be modeled with Solid Edge, as well as custom, one-of-a-kind equipment for specific plants.

Additional information on the software's equipment modeling capabilities, including parameter descriptions of the delivered symbols, how to create 2D and 3D symbols and incorporate them into your reference data, is available in the *SmartPlant 3D Reference Data Guide*, the *SmartPlant 3D 2D Symbols User's Guide*, and the *SmartPlant 3D Symbols Reference Data Guide*. Each of these documents is available from **Help > Printable Guides** in the software.

Isometric Drawing Capability

The software's isometric drawing interface gives users the ability to create piping isometric drawings by extracting data from 3D models. Additionally, the SmartPlant 3D isometric drawing interface works with ISOGEN® software that not only enables users to create piping isometric drawings, including dimensioning, but that also allows users to generate notes, recognize attribute changes, and define which symbols to use in the final drawings. Knowledge of isometric drawings is required to effectively utilize this functionality. For more information on isometric drawing capabilities, see the *Piping Isometric Drawings User's Guide*.

SECTION 3 Working in an Integrated Environment

Working with the software in an integrated environment allows you to standardize and improve the communication among the various authoring tools you use in the course of designing, constructing, and operating a Plant. SmartPlant Foundation acts as a central repository for data and a medium through which information is shared among other tools, such as SmartPlant Instrumentation, SmartPlant P&ID, and SmartPlant 3D.

The following graphic displays what SmartPlant 3D publishes and retrieves and additional information about what data is exchanged.



SmartPlant 3D/SmartMarine 3D Data Exchange Example

Most of the commands that provide access to SmartPlant integration functionality exist on the **SmartPlant** menu in the various SmartPlant 3D task environments. For example, in the Drawings and Reports task, you can use the commands on the **SmartPlant** menu to publish orthographic drawings, 3D model data, isometric drawings, and reports. You can also use the **SmartPlant** menu to access the SmartPlant Foundation Web Client in order to browse in SmartPlant Foundation and subscribe to change notifications and compare documents. In other SmartPlant 3D tasks, you can use the **SmartPlant** menu commands to correlate items between the Plant and the SmartPlant Foundation database and retrieve P&IDs, DDP files, Cable Schedules, Plant Breakdown Structure and Work Breakdown Structure, and Project Lists.

For detailed information about using the SmartPlant integration commands found in SmartPlant 3D, see the *Common User's Guide* and the *Orthographic Drawings User's Guide*. Both documents are available with the **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

For more information about configuring SmartPlant 3D to work in an integrated environment, see *Configure for an Integrated Environment* (on page 115).

SmartPlant Enterprise Work Process Documentation

Integration between SmartPlant Enterprise applications is described in Integration Capability Statements. These documents are available on *http://crmweb.intergraph.com/ https://crmweb.intergraph.com* under **Product Documentation > Enterprise Work Processes**.

Integration Capability Statements provide guidance about how SmartPlant Enterprise technical capabilities map to work processes. Each document describes out-of-the box capabilities for implementing the work process, including:

- Swim lane diagram of work process
- Critical suggestions and precautions

SECTION 4 Internationalization

Supporting internationalization in a homogeneous environment is one of the enhancements available in SmartPlant Enterprise. A homogeneous environment uses elements from only a single locale. For example, a German customer running on a German operating system using only German characters and German cultural conventions is a fully supported homogeneous environment configuration.

Homogeneous Environments

When starting a new project, use extra care during installation and configuration to ensure the proper creation and maintenance of homogeneous environments:

- All the computers (servers and clients) within an integrated SmartPlant Enterprise implementation must have the same regional settings, and no one should change the regional settings after the project has started.
- Do not cross the decimal locale boundary. This is the most common cause of numeric data corruption and calculation errors. Having users with different regional settings (like with a period versus a comma for the decimal point) causes the software to interpret values unpredictably. For example, a pipe run with a pressure of 35.3 psi can be read by the software as 353 psi to the user with different regional settings. A cable length defined as 39 ft 11,21 inches has been interpreted as 121718910971323 meters when published to an XML file. These incorrect interpretations may be used in internal software calculations and can be impossible to backtrack or correct. Do not change the decimal point character to try to solve an issue. Doing so will only corrupt values in the database or in text files.
- Do not cross the character-set locale boundary. For example, the character set boundary between Western (Latin-based) and Eastern Europe (Cyrillic-based), or between Eastern Europe and Japan.
- Create Oracle databases using AL32UTF8 for the database character set and AL16UTF16 for the NLS character set.
- Never modify the NLS_LANG registry entry on an Oracle client. Doing so causes the character data not to convert to Unicode.
- Create Microsoft SQL Server databases with locale-specific collation settings and ensure that all databases have the **same** setting.

Heterogeneous Environments

In contrast, a heterogeneous environment using elements from different, or even multiple locales, **is not supported**. Many customers are currently operating in unsupported heterogeneous environments and are often not aware of that fact. Examples of heterogeneous environments:

- Entering or viewing Japanese data on an US/English operating system
- Using German Regional Settings (where the decimal point is a comma) on a US/English operating system
- Using databases with different character encodings such as CL8MSWIN1251 or JA16SJIS
- Using multiple languages in a project, **especially** when crossing language-group boundaries
- Using an English server with different local language clients

International / Bi-lingual Projects

International bi-lingual projects are possible; however, great care must be used when configuring these environments. Limitations exist and must be properly understood:

- Oracle and MS SQL Server databases can reside on any language operating system, as long as the databases have been created and configured with proper Unicode and collation settings.
- All Microsoft operating systems (Japanese, Russian, German, and so forth) can enter English characters. The reverse, however, is not true in most cases.
- Keyboard-locale can be changed as long as a character-set and code-page boundary is not crossed. For example, English, German, French, and Spanish characters can all be used in the same project because the same Windows[®] code-page (1252) is used. However, Russian characters (code-page 1251) cannot be used in a US/English environment.
- You must decide which language operating system will be the master for bi- lingual projects.

The following is an example of a Russian-based project:

Companies in the United States and the United Kingdom are working a project with a Russian company and the deliverables (drawings, reports, and so forth) must ultimately be provided in Russian. The companies in the U.S. and the U.K. are working the project using the "master" Russian operating systems (possibly using virtual Russian operating systems running on VMware Workstation). The U.S. and U.K. companies can install and use English Microsoft Office products on the Russian operating system because Office products are globally enabled. If a Russian interface exists for the SmartPlant Enterprise application, then Russian users can use the Russian interface while the English-speaking users would continue to use the US/English interface. English-speaking engineers can enter English characters. Russian-speaking engineers can enter Russian characters.

However, because the Russian locale uses different decimal and character-set locales, everyone (English and Russian engineers) **must** use the Russian decimal symbol which is a comma. For customization purposes, databases can be modified to accommodate new Russian-specific requirements (fields, properties, and so forth.) Using filters, display sets, and other software features, bi-lingual projects can be further customized. Graphic data, reports, and so forth can be created in either or both languages.

CAUTION Do not change regional settings to reflect a U.S. environment in order to resolve problems in a non-US/English homogeneous configuration. Doing this creates a heterogeneous configuration that **will** cause other possibly hidden problems that cannot be corrected. Everyone working on a project must use the same regional settings and character set throughout the life of the project.

Questions and Assistance

Please contact your support representative for assistance and answers to your questions: Intergraph Customer Support (*http://support.intergraph.com* (*http://support.intergraph.com*)).

SECTION 5

SmartPlant 3D Hardware and Software Recommendations

A typical data flow between client and server computers is shown below. Before beginning an installation of SmartPlant 3D, verify that your computers meet the hardware recommendations and software requirements.

NOTE Multiple services can be installed on the same physical computer for small projects.



In This Section

SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations	21
SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations	22
Software Loading Order	26
Installation Checklist	27
Disk Partitioning Guidelines	27
SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations	28
Silent Installation	35
Silent Installation for Service Packs	38

SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations

Before beginning an installation of SmartPlant 3D, verify that your servers meet the following hardware recommendations and software requirements.

Applicable Hardware

- Database server
- File server

Hardware Recommendations

- Intel Xeon[®] 5600 Series or better (64-bit instruction set, not Itanium[®])
- 4 GB to 32 GB or greater RAM depending on project size
- For hard drive size, see SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations (on page 28)
- Backup system for server
- Access to DVD drive, either locally or through a network connection
- 1 GbE or higher network interface for client connections

Supported Operating Systems

Microsoft Windows Standard/Enterprise Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)

Supported Database Servers

- Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 3 (Standard edition for stand-alone environments; Enterprise edition for Global Workshare environments; 64-bit)
- Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8 (Standard edition for stand-alone environments; Enterprise edition for Global Workshare environments; 64-bit)

IMPORTANT There are internationalization considerations concerning the SQL Server collation settings you specify that relate to reference data, using SmartPlant Enterprise integrated systems, Global Workshare Configuration, multiple locales, backup/restore, reports, and upgrading to future releases. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

With SmartPlant 3D, 64-bit servers can be used with 32-bit operating systems, databases, and workstations. For increased performance, Intergraph recommends a 64-bit server, operating system, and database, especially for medium and large projects. The 64-bit versions of SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8run on the 64-bit version of Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2.

Software Prerequisites

- Adobe Reader (required to view the Software License Agreement and Printable Guides. You can download Acrobat Reader from the Adobe web site.)
- Microsoft XML Core Services (MSXML) 6.0 (Database server only)

Microsoft .NET 3.5 SP1 (Database server only)

NOTES

• For more information on hardware requirements, see *SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations* (on page 28).

- For information on disk space usage and determining RAID configuration, see *Disk Usage* (on page 64).
- For specifications regarding minimum hard drive disk space requirements by the product setup, see *Disk Partitioning Guidelines* (on page 27).
- On the server, distribute files across several disk drives with the following minimum distribution: operating system and database software on one drive, database data files on another drive, and the database log file on the third drive.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Hardware and Software Recommendations (on page 19)

SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations

Before beginning the installation of SmartPlant 3D, verify that your end-user workstation computers meet the following hardware recommendations and software requirements.

Applicable Hardware

- Administrative client
- Modeling client
- Interference detection computer
- Drawing batch computer
- Name generator computer
- Duplication and synchronization computer
- SmartPlant Piping Specification Remote computer

Hardware Recommendations

- Intel Core i7, Quad Core
- 6 GB RAM
- Access to a DVD drive, either locally or through a network connection
- Monitor capable of a minimum of 1280 x 1024 resolution
- Graphics card designed for 3D intensive applications that meets the following requirements:
 - 32-bit main RGBA pixel buffer
 - Hardware OpenGL 2.1 support
 - Hardware Z buffer: 24 bit or higher
 - 256 MB RAM
 - 8-bit stencil buffer
 - Hardware Alpha blending support
 - Graphics acceleration set to full
 - Hardware Anti-aliasing support recommended
 - Latest available drivers should be installed
- 1 GbE network interface

Video Cards

There have been many enhancements to the graphic engine of SmartPlant 3D. Most issues are resolved by loading the most current display driver or rolling your current display driver back one version. If the current driver does not fix your particular card's problem, then please copy the

"CoreDisplaySettings.ini" file from [Product Folder]/Core/Tools/Administrator/Bin to [Product Folder]/Core/Shared/bin and contact your SmartPlant 3D support representative.

We recommend workstation class graphics cards (designed for use with CAD applications) with as much RAM as is affordable. The minimum RAM is 256MB, but more RAM is better. Because the world of graphics cards changes so quickly, we can only document the specifications required by SmartPlant 3D and publish the cards we have actually used in certification.

NOTE All clients referencing Z+F Point Cloud data need to turn off the SmartPlant 3D hardware with the CoreDisplaySettings.ini file.

The following graphics cards have been tested and support the display enhancements:

ATI Fire GL V3600

To obtain better graphic performance with SmartPlant 3D, change the following settings:

- On ATI FireGL video cards, right-click on the desktop and select Properties > Settings
 > Advanced. On the Configuration tab, create a new configuration profile called
 SmartPlant 3D. After this configuration profile is created, select the SmartPlant 3D
 profile, select Modify, and then check Force copy swap.
- ATI Radeon HD 2400 Pro
- NVidia GeForce 7600 GT

To obtain better graphic performance with SmartPlant 3D, enter change following settings:

- On NVidia GeForce cards, right-click on the desktop and select Properties > Settings > Advanced. On the NVIDIA Card tab, select OpenGL Settings in the Performance and Quality Settings section. In the dialog box that opens, change the Buffer-Flipping Mode selection to Use block transfer, and then click OK.
- NVidia Quadro FX 580
- NVidia Quadro FX 880M
- NVidia Quadro FX 1800

The following graphics cards do not support the display enhancements:

- ATI Fire GL V3100
- ATI Radeon x1300/1500
- Intel 82945G Express
- NVidia GeForce FX 5200
- NVidia Quadro FX 3450/4000

As a supplement to this information, a Microsoft Excel workbook is provided on eCustomer that records anecdotal evidence obtained from users. Please go to eCustomer at *https://crmweb.intergraph.com (https://crmweb.intergraph.com/ecustomer_enu)* and select Download Software Updates > Products > SmartPlant 3D > Technical Notes and White papers > Graphics cards used with SmartPlant 3D.

Neither of the previous lists is comprehensive. In some cases, the SmartPlant 3D middle tier error log (with the error logging level set to at least "2-Detailed") will provide more information. Please see the examples of messages returned in the error log listed below:

 The graphics card or graphics card driver does not support Textures/Shaders. An updated graphics driver could improve performance.

This indicates that the graphics adapter, driver or display settings do not support the "Shaded with Hardware Enhanced Edges" Render Mode on the Format View dialog box. In addition, the graphics adapter, driver or display settings do not support textures.

 The graphics card or graphics card driver does not support Shaders. An updated graphics driver could improve performance. This indicates that the graphics adapter, driver or display settings do not support the "Shaded with Hardware Enhanced Edges" Render Mode on the Format View dialog box. However, textures are supported.

• The graphics card or graphics card driver does not support Textures. An updated graphics driver could improve performance.

This indicates that the graphics adapter, driver or display settings do not support textures. However, the "Shaded with Hardware Enhanced Edges" Render Mode on the Format View dialog box is supported. Please note that the performance may be slow on an ATI card.

 Hardware Acceleration is Turned off VBO Texture and Hardware edges will not be supported.

This message indicates that Hardware Acceleration in Display Settings is disabled or the client is being accessed via Remote Desktop or Citrix Client. If Hardware Acceleration in Display Settings is disabled, it should be enabled by selecting the "Advanced" button on the Settings tab of the Display Properties dialog. Then, the Hardware Acceleration can be modified from the Troubleshoot tab.

IMPORTANT Due to the 32-bit precision limitations of graphic cards, you may need to create several design coordinate systems so that the objects being modeled are within 10,000 meters (6.2 miles) of the global coordinate system. Objects modeled outside this limit will not display correctly. If your model coordinate values are larger that this limit (for example, E = 20,000, N = 30,000), to get the coordinate readout that you want, you should define a coordinate system at correspondingly large negative values (example, E = -20,000, N = -30,000). Then, use the coordinate system you created as your active coordinate system for modeling and output. Do not bring this new coordinate system into your workspace or you will have the display problems that you are trying to avoid.

Supported Operating Systems

- Microsoft Windows 7 Service Pack 1 Professional or Enterprise with UAC 'On' at Level 3 (Default) (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Microsoft Windows Vista Business with Service Pack 2 with UAC 'On' (Default) (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit) only as a client for Citrix XEN App 6.0

NOTE Citrix XENApp 6.0 can be installed only on the Windows 2008 Server R2 64-bit operating system. The Windows 2008 Server acts as a client in this case. The Windows 2008 Server R2 64-bit operating system can also be used to install an ancillary server, such as IFC, Drawings, or Intergraph Batch Services.

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP3 (32-bit)
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 (64-bit)

Supported Database Clients

- Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Standard Service Pack 3 (32-bit and 64-bit) (Required for Project Management and Interference Checking, otherwise optional)
- Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8; 32-bit only (Required for all client computers)

Software Prerequisites

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0 or greater (required for viewing the documentation delivered with the software)
- Adobe Reader 9.0 or later (required for viewing the Software License Agreement and Printable Guides. You can download Acrobat Reader from the Adobe web site.)
- Microsoft XML Core Services (MSXML) 6.0 (required for extracting isometric drawings)

- Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 SP1
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update
- Microsoft Office 2003 (Windows XP only), Microsoft Office 2007, or Microsoft Office 2010 (32-bit only) (Windows Vista, Windows 7, or Windows Server 2008 R2)
- Intergraph Batch Services 6.1.0.3 or later if you plan to use the computer for remote batch processing

NOTES

- For specifications regarding minimum hard drive disk space requirements by the product setup, see *Disk Partitioning Guidelines* (on page 27).
- Dual screen configurations should have either a single graphics card with two VGA outputs or two identical graphics cards. The graphics cards should otherwise meet the requirements of the specified graphics card recommendations.
- Use thread safe video drivers and CAD application certified video cards when using multiple processor systems.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Hardware and Software Recommendations (on page 19)

Software Loading Order

The ability to run the software successfully is greatly affected by the order in which all the necessary and underlying products are loaded. Follow the loading order below to prevent components being out-of-sync. Following this loading order also helps with analysis of any post-installation problems you might encounter.

The following table outlines the established load order for the prerequisites associated with each of the SmartPlant 3D installations:

Database Server Installation	Workstation Installation
Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit)	Windows 7 SP1 Professional or Enterprise with UAC 'On' at :Level 3 (Default) (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Vista Business SP2 (32-bit and 64-bit), Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP3 (32-bit), or Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 (64-bit)
Microsoft .NET 3.5 SP1	Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 SP1
	Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update
	Internet Explorer 8.0 or greater
	Microsoft XML 6.0
	NOTE Microsoft SQL Server 2008 requires XML 6.0 and will automatically install it as part of the SQL Server 2008 Prerequisite installation.
Adobe Reader	Adobe Reader
	Microsoft Office 2003, Office 2007, or Office 2010 $(32\text{-bit})^2$
Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8 (Standard Edition for stand-alone environments; Enterprise Edition for Global Workshare environments; 64-bit) or	Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8 Client Release (32-bit only); (Do not use the Oracle "light client" as it does not include some DLLs required by SmartPlant 3D.) or
Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 3 (Standard Edition for stand-alone environments; Enterprise Edition for Global Workshare environments; 64-bit)	Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Client Service Pack 3 ¹ ; (32-bit and 64-bit)
	SmartPlant License Manager 2010 (11.0) or higher

¹ Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Client (with SQL Server 2008 SP3) is required only for the client software installation if the **Project Management** option is installed; otherwise, they are not integral to the default workstation software installation.

²When creating drawing borders or embedded reports within the Drawings and Reports task on computers with Microsoft Office 2003, Office 2007, Office 2010 (32-bit), you must modify the security settings in Excel to allow Visual Basic projects to run. For more information about Office 2003, Office 2007, Office 2010, and service packs, refer to the Microsoft web site (http://www.microsoft.com/).

IMPORTANT Do not skip any restarts recommended by the system. Doing so can have unintended consequences.

Other users who want to perform different tasks in the overall design workflow might need additional software, such as Visual Basic 6.0; Visual Studio 2008 SP1; Siemens Solid Edge Version 20 or ST3; Tekla Structures Version 16.0, 16.1, or 17.0; or AceCad StruCad Version 16. Additionally, if you intend to reference or export PDS projects, you must install the appropriate PDS add-in. The PDS data reference and export add-ins are delivered on the product DVD.

NOTES

- This version of the software supports PDS 2010 SE and PDS 2011 SE.
- PDS software and all of its prerequisite software are also required in order to use the PDS integration functionality. For more information, see *Integrating with PDS* (on page 116).
- If you are installing the Name Generator Service on an Oracle 32-bit Client computer, the computer must be configured to access the Oracle database server through Net Manager.
- If you are installing the 64-bit Name Generator Service on an Oracle 64-bit Client computer, the firewall must be configured to allow DCOM Dynamic Ports. For more information, see *Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 2008 Server* (on page 79).

Special Consideration for Non-English Locales

The system language specified for Microsoft Office must be the same as the system language specified by the operating system. For example, if your operating system language is English, Microsoft Office must also be set to English. For overall assistance with installing the software in a non-US English environment, visit the Intergraph Support web site at http://www.intergraph.com/support.

Virus Scanners and Performance

Other programs running on the computer, such as virus scanners, media players, and mail programs, might affect the performance of SmartPlant 3D. Virus scanners affect performance by continuously checking the data files and log files. Exclude the database data folder on the database server from the virus scanner. For maximum performance, reduce the number of processes running while using SmartPlant 3D.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Hardware and Software Recommendations (on page 19)

Installation Checklist

For the recommended installation workflow, please see the installation checklist (SP3DInstall_Checklist.pdf), available in the Help folder on the product media. This checklist is also delivered during product set up to c:\Program Files\Common Files\Intergraph\SmartPlant\Help folder for future reference.

Disk Partitioning Guidelines

For best performance when loading and running the software, partition the hard drive according to the following guidelines:

- Format all partitions as NTFS file systems (FAT is not supported).
- By default, the software is installed to C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D. Verify that you have sufficient free space on your C:\ partition (or another partition if you want to install there).

Recommended Disk Space for Software Setup

SmartPlant 3D Installation - Default setup for a workstation computer ¹	1.8 GB
SmartMarine 3D Installation - Default setup for a workstation computer ¹	2.8 GB
SmartPlant 3D Installation - Complete setup for a workstation computer ²	2.25 GB
SmartPlant 3D Reference Data - Default setup for database server	1.27 GB
SmartMarine 3D Reference Data - Default setup for database server	1.95 GB

¹ The default setup for a SmartPlant 3D workstation computer provides all the environments necessary for general SmartPlant 3D modeling.

² The complete setup for a SmartPlant 3D workstation computer includes all features and adds the administrative functionality: plant creation, database migration, access management, database interference detection, and includes the following options only: **Project Management**, **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity**, **Bulkload Reference Data**, and **Database Interference Detection Service**. Additionally, a complete setup includes the **3D Model Import** and **Piping Specification Remote Access Server** options, which installs the required components for importing model data into SmartPlant 3D and the necessary software for correlating piping specification data between SmartPlant 3D and SmartPlant P&ID, respectively.

You also will need additional disk space if you intend to use other products, such as Visual Studio or Solid Edge. Please consult your system administrator for this and additional software not provided by Intergraph Process, Power & Marine.

CAUTION Do not continue with installation until enough disk space is free on the computer acting as the database server and each workstation computer as stated in the aforementioned guidelines.

SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations

Use these guidelines and examples in sizing SmartPlant 3D hardware configurations, including those that include Global Workshare Configuration (GWC). The recommendations are based SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8.

Hardware sizing, especially for servers, depends on many factors such as:

- The number of concurrent users per site
- The number of sites (Global workshare)
- The size of the project (which translates into the size of the databases)
- Other software that is running on the machine

For best performance in medium to large Global Workshare Configurations, Intergraph recommends using 64-bit hardware and operating system. It is possible to use 64-bit hardware and a 32-bit operating system.

With a Microsoft SQL database on 64-bit hardware and operating system, SmartPlant 3D was tested with 11 Global Workshare sites. The 64-bit version of Oracle can support a few more sites. It is possible to combine 64-bit hardware and operating systems on servers with 64-bit or 32-bit client workstations running 32-bit operating systems.

Concurrent Users

The size of the system depends partly on the number of concurrent users, that is, users actively working at the same time. In a Global Workshare Configuration (GWC), it is probable that work will be done at several sites in a non-concurrent way. In this case, there is less impact on performance. For example, if you have two sites with 60 users at each site but the users at the two sites do not work at the same time, you could consider the user load to be 60 users.

In a Global Workshare Configuration when users are working concurrently at several sites, the work done at one site will impact each site as the data is pushed to the other sites. In a hub and spokes configuration, the data is first pushed to the hub then the hub pushes it to the other sites. We estimate that the equivalent user load (the number of effective users) for each server to be the users on that server plus 25% of the total concurrent users of all the other sites. For example, in a configuration with 6 sites and 40 users at 5 sites, and 5 users at 1 site:

- When 3 sites (with 40 users) are working concurrently, the equivalent number of users at each site is: 40 (concurrent users for this site) + (0.25 * (2 * 40)) (users for the 2 other sites) = 60 users.
- When all 6 sites are working concurrently:
 - a. The equivalent number of users at each of the 40-user sites is: 40 + (0.25 * (165)) = 81 users
 - b. The equivalent number of users at the 5-user site is: 5 + (0.25 * (200)) = 55 users.

Project Size Estimates

Use the following estimates to help define project size. The model database is an important factor in determining project size.

The number of users for each project size below (small, medium, and large) is the **effective** *number connected to a single server*. The **effective** number of users should be calculated by taking into consideration:

- 1. Global Workshare Setup use the 25% formula above
- 2. Drawing Batch server add 3 users
- 3. Remote IFC add 1 user

One small project

- 1 to 15 effective users on one database server
- Model database up to 8 GB
- Server is used for model and catalog databases and catalog file server
- Separate interference checking (IFC) computer
- Separate drawing batch computer
- Name generator server and licensing computer
- Modeling (detail design) and administrator workstations can be on separate or on the same computers

One medium project

- 16 to 50 **effective** users on one database server
- Model database 8 15 GB
- Databases and catalog file server
- Separate interference checking (IFC) computer

- One or more separate drawing batch computer
- Name generator server and licensing computer
- Modeling (detail design) and administrator computers can be on separate or on the same computer
- Use a separate distribution server for Global Workshare Configuration

One large project

- 51 to 100 effective users on one database server (contact Intergraph if you plan to have more than 100 effective users on one database server)
- Model database 15 GB or more
- Databases and catalog file server (have a separate catalog file server for multiple large projects or plants sharing the same catalog)
- Separate interference checking (IFC) computer
- Multiple separate drawing batch computer
- Name generator server and licensing computer
- Modeling (detail design) computers
- Use a separate distribution server for Global Workshare Configuration
- Administrator computer

Modeling (Detail Design) Workstation Sizing

The project size does not have a significant impact on the workstation because users will use filters to define the objects with which they will be working.

- Intel Core i7, Quad Core
- 6 GB RAM
- Access to a DVD drive, either locally or through a network connection
- Monitor capable of a minimum of 1280 x 1024 resolution
- 1 GbE network interface

OpenGL Graphics Cards

NOTE The following graphics card information is specific to 32-bit workstations. Intergraph is investigating graphics cards for 64-bit workstations.

Graphics cards designed for 3D intensive applications that generate low CPU overhead and meet the following requirements (AGP or better):

- 32-bit main RGBA pixel buffer
- Hardware OpenGL 2.1 support
- Hardware Z buffer: 24 bit or higher
- 256 MB RAM, 8-bit stencil buffer
- Hardware Alpha blending support recommended to improve speed of translucent object display
- Hardware Anti-aliasing support recommended
- Use latest available drivers

Not all OpenGL graphics cards provide satisfactory results. Many of the recent generation video cards provide some level of OpenGL acceleration. Some manufacturers provide poor OpenGL drivers that can cause artifacts. Testing has shown that NVIDIA provides good drivers for its Geforce2 and beyond Graphics Processing Units (GPU). Cards with double-buffered overlay

planes (such as the Wildcat cards) have an advantage because highlighting can be done without having to do saves and restores, which may benefit performance in specific cases.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations (on page 22)

System Administrator Workstation Sizing

The Administrator Server includes Project Management synchronization, a memory intensive process.

- Intel Core i7, Quad Core
- 6 GB RAM
- Access to a DVD drive, either locally or through a network connection
- Monitor capable of a minimum of 1280 x 1024 resolution
- 1 GbE network interface

Database Server Sizing

With SmartPlant 3D, 64-bit servers can be used with 32-bit operating systems, databases, and workstations. For increased performance, Intergraph recommends a 64-bit server, operating system and database, especially for medium and large projects. The 64-bit versions of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8run on the 64-bit version of Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2.

For large projects, Intergraph recommends having a database server that is dedicated to SmartPlant 3D and runs only one project. For medium and small projects, several projects can be run on the same database server. However, having multiple projects on the same server increases the server requirements. When sharing several projects, add additional hard drives and increase the memory and CPUs. Also consider the impact of sharing on your network.

Server Specifications

Project size	Small	Medium	Large
Number of processor cores (one Core 2 Duo counts as two)	2	2 – 4	4 – 8 or more
Memory for SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8	4 – 8 GB	8 – 16 GB	32+ GB
Bus Size, OS, and Database	64-bit	64-bit	64-bit

The type of memory has a limited impact on the overall performance.

NOTE Running a Microsoft SQL Server or Oracle database on an Itanium processor-based server has not been certified and should not be done.

Hard Drives

Distribute files across several disk drives on the server. Each drive does not need a large capacity. The speed of the drive is important, so use 15K RPM or faster. Add disk arrays to maximize performance if you experience any I/O bottleneck.

Intergraph recommends RAID 10 for performance and redundancy.

Small Project with SQL Server

The following example shows a configuration for a small project using Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3. The minimum distribution is three physical drives.

C: Drive	Operating system and SQL Server software	
E: Drive	Database data files (.mdf files)	
F: Drive	Database log files (.ldf files)	

Large Project with SQL Server

The following example shows a configuration for a large project using Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3.

C: Drive	RAID 1	2 hard drives internal to the server for the operating system and the Page File
E: Drive	RAID 10	8-12 SAN drives for the data files for the SQL Server Master, Site, Site Schema, Catalog, Catalog Schema, Model, Report, and Report Schema databases.
F: Drive	RAID 10	4-8 SAN drives for log files for the SQL Server Master, Site, Site Schema, Catalog, Catalog Schema, Model, Report, and Report Schema databases.
G: Drive	RAID 0 or 1 hard drive	2 SAN drives for the SQL Server temp database and SmartPlant 3D backup files and the Page file

Large Project with Oracle

The general recommendation for a large project on an Oracle database is:

User	RAID Level	Physical Disks in Array	Disk Space Requirement	Purpose or Contents
S3D .d files	10	12	No specific requirement (N.S.R.) / 500 GB	Oracle .d data files for databases
S3D .i files	10	8	N.S.R. / 150 GB	Oracle .l index files for databases
Redo Log & SYSAUX	10	4	N.S.R. / 150 GB	Oracle Redo Logs, StreamsTableSpace (Workshare only)
Undo Log	10	4	N.S.R. / 150 GB	Oracle Undo Logs and Oracle System Files
Archive Log	5	3	500 GB	Oracle Archive Log
OS, page file	1	2	N.S.R.	operating system and page file

NOTE Be sure to spread the Oracle files across separate arrays for added redundancy.

Global Workshare Configuration Distribution Server Sizing

Global Workshare Configuration (GWC) might require a separate server for distribution for large projects.

- Intel Xeon[®] 5600 Series or better (64-bit instruction set, not Itanium[®])
- 4 GB to 32 GB or greater RAM depending on project size
- For hard drive size, see SmartPlant 3D Project Hardware Sizing Recommendations (on page 28)
- Backup system for server
- Access to DVD drive, either locally or through a network connection
- 1 GbE or higher network interface for client connections
- Distribution database on a RAID 1 or RAID 10 disk array (RAID 5 is not ideal because of the many writes produced by replication.)
- Distribution database log file on its own dedicated RAID 1 disk array

For small projects, a single server (the hub in a hub and spoke configuration) can act as a publisher, a distributor, and a subscriber all at the same time. For medium projects in a Global Workshare Configuration, the database server can also serve as the distribution server.

For large projects with many sites, use two different servers: one as publisher and subscriber and the other as the distributor. Using a separate server as the distributor helps to reduce the load on the publisher.

Interference Checking (IFC) Server Sizing

You should have a remote project processing computer for interference checking (IFC) that is separate from the computer hosting the databases. The interference checking computer can process more than one Plant. This computer does not need to be a high-end server, but should meet the minimum hardware requirements for a client computer. See *SmartPlant 3D Workstation recommendations* (on page 22) for these requirements.

There is not a specific hard drive size requirement because the interference detection service does not store information locally.

Batch Server Sizing

You can use remote project processing computers, or batch servers, to off-load compute intensive tasks such as updating drawings in the Drawings task or running database backups and integrity checks in Project Management.

You should have at least one remote project processing computer for each site database. This remote computer does not have to be a high-end server, but should at least meet the minimum hardware requirements for a client computer. See *SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations* (on page 22) for these requirements.

IMPORTANT

- A batch server runs only one batch job at a time. The maximum number of batch jobs that can run in parallel for a site database is equal to the number of batch servers.
- You can use one or more batch servers for a single site database containing multiple model databases.
- You cannot use a single batch server for multiple site databases.

File Server Sizing

You will need a computer to act as a file server with enough disk space for symbols and files. This computer does not need to be a high end-server, but should meet the minimum hardware requirements for a client computer. See *SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations* (on page 22) for these requirements.

License Server and Name Generator Server Sizing

The Name Generator Service can be installed on a stand-alone computer or can be installed on the same computer used for the file server, batch server, IFC server, or license server.

License Server

SmartPlant License Manager (SPLM) uses server/client architecture to distribute licenses for SmartPlant 3D (and other SmartPlant Enterprise products.) SPLM requires very little system resources and so can be installed on the batch server, file server, IFC server, or database server as long as the hardware configurations below are observed.

Hardware Configurations

The SmartPlant License Manager licensing computer software should be installed on a stable, single node, hardware configuration (such as a simple PC), with a static IP address, because license key installation and license seat usage authentication depends on the information gathered from the physical hardware. Any automated changes that cause the hardware information not to match with the information used to generate the license key will result in a failure of the authentication process.

Virtual (including VMware®), shadowed, mirrored, dynamic, or distributed hardware configurations cannot be used as a SmartPlant License Manager licensing computer. This includes terminal (application) servers, networked and distributed storage management systems, and so forth. When these specialized systems occur in the user's network, the SmartPlant License Manager Server licensing computer should be installed on a separate dedicated hardware configuration system. The SmartPlant License Manager licensing computer should be situated on the user's network where it can be accessed by all systems that are running application software that relies on the SmartPlant License Manager licensing computer for license management.

Multiple SmartPlant License Manager licensing computers can be used in the user's network as long as each system is a unique hardware system/installation. If SmartPlant License Manager licensing computers are cloned after the license key has been installed, then the license management will fail on the cloned system. Each SmartPlant License Manager licensing computer requires its own unique license key.

NOTES

 RAID (redundant array of independent disks) and SAN (storage area networks) are not supported on a SmartPlant License Manager license computer.

The license computer must have the same version (or later) of SmartPlant License Manager installed as any client computers. In other words, you cannot use a newer version on a client computer to retrieve a license from an older version of SmartPlant License Manager on the licensing computer. The license computer must have the same version (or a newer version) installed than the clients.

Silent Installation

You can use the Windows Installer to install and uninstall the software using a command line rather than the normal user interface. One advantage of using a command line to install software is that you can perform unattended installations. The following command line parameters and arguments can be used with the Windows Installer executable (*msiexec.exe*) to perform a silent installation of the product:

To get a list of command line arguments for *msiexec.exe*, enter in a command window:

msiexec.exe /?

Required arguments (for silent install):

/qn

/i <path and file name of msi file>

SERIALNUMBER=<serial number>

SLAACCEPT=Yes

If the **PIDService** feature is added, the following are also required:

NAMEGENUSERNAME=<mydomain\myuserid>

NAMEGENPASSWORD=<mypassword>

NOTES

- /qn means no user interface of any form is displayed. If you do not include /qn on the command line, dialog boxes are displayed during the installation process.
- SLAACCEPT=Yes means that you are accepting the Software License Agreement.

Optional Arguments	Default
INSTALLDIR= <path install="" to=""></path>	C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D
ADDLOCAL= <comma delimited="" features="" install="" list="" of="" to="" user-selectable=""></comma>	See the table below for additional information.
REMOVE = <comma delimited="" features="" list="" of="" remove="" to="" user-selectable=""></comma>	See the table below for additional information.
/L <path, file="" logging="" name="" of=""></path,>	
/x <path file="" msi="" to=""></path>	Uninstalls SmartPlant 3D

NOTES

- ADDLOCAL and REMOVE refer to user-selectable features. There are features that the user cannot see that are automatically installed that are not referenced in the list below.
- For ADDLOCAL and REMOVE, ALL can be used, as in, ADDLOCAL=ALL or REMOVE=ALL

IMPORTANT

- The arguments for the command line are case-sensitive.
- If you are going to install SmartPlant 3D silently with a script under a Terminal Services Server in Application Server mode, we recommend that you update the script to include a Change User mode command to set the user mode to Install mode first, and then back to Execute mode after the SmartPlant 3D installation command. This ensures that changes written to registry key HKEY_CURRENT_USER are properly redirected to their corresponding HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE registry after each user logs in into the

system. These steps are also recommended when applying hot fixes and service packs in a silent install.

List of User-Selectable Features

In the following table, the first column contains the displayed feature name as seen on the **Select Features** dialog box during regular installation. The second column contains the command line feature name, which is case sensitive, to use with the **ADDLOCAL** and **REMOVE** arguments. The third column displays if the feature is displayed by default if **ADDLOCAL** and **REMOVE** are not set.

To add or remove user-selectable features, use **ADDLOCAL** and **REMOVE**. If neither of these arguments is used, the features shown below are not installed. If **ADDLOCAL** is set to **ProjectEnvironment** and **Server** (ADDLOCAL=ProjectEnvironment,Server), **ProjectEnvironment** (Project Management) and **Server** (SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity) are installed.

Displayed Feature Name	Command Line Feature Name	Installed by Default
Project Management	ProjectEnvironment	No
Piping Specification Remote Access Server	PIDService	No
SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity	Server	No
Bulkload Reference Data	Bulkload	No
Database Interference Detection Service	IFCService	No

Examples of running client silent install from the command line:

This command line installs the product into the default location, *C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D*. No logging file is created unless a problem occurs. If a problem occurs, a logging file with a brief description of the problem is created in the *Temp* folder.

```
msiexec.exe /i "<Path>\S3DInstallation.msi" SERIALNUMBER=12345678901234
SLAACCEPT=Yes /qn
```

This command line installs the product into the default location, *C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D*. It also creates a verbose logging file called *loggingfile.log* into the path provided.

```
msiexec.exe /i "<Path>\S3DInstallation.msi" SERIALNUMBER=12345678901234
SLAACCEPT=Yes /qn /Lvoicewarmup "<path>\loggingfile.log"
```

This command line installs the product into location, *D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D*. It also creates a verbose logging file called *loggingfile.log* into the path provided.

```
msiexec.exe /i "<Path>\S3DInstallation.msi" SERIALNUMBER=12345678901234
SLAACCEPT=Yes INSTALLDIR="D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D" /qn
/Lvoicewarmup "<Path>\loggingfile.log"
```

This command line installs all features of SP3D, including **PIDService** into the location, *D:\Program Files\SP3D*. No logging file is created (unless an error occurs).
```
msiexec.exe /i "<Path>\S3DInstallation.msi" SERIALNUMBER=12345678901234
SLAACCEPT=Yes INSTALLDIR="D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D" ADDLOCAL=ALL
NAMEGENUSERNAME=<mydomain\myuserid> NAMEGENPASSWORD=<mypassword>/qn
```

This installs all of the features listed above except **PIDService** into the location *D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D*. No logging file is created (unless an error occurs).

```
msiexec.exe /i "<path>\S3DInstallation.msi" SERIALNUMBER=12345678901234
SLAACCEPT=Yes INSTALLDIR="D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D" ADDLOCAL=ALL
REMOVE=PIDService /qn
```

This command line uninstalls the software with no user interaction but displays the progress on screen.

```
msiexec.exe /passive /x "<path>\S3DInstallation.msi" /l+*
C:\temp\Passive Removal.log
```

TIP You can identify installation errors by searching for the string "return value 3" in the log file. If you do not specify a name or location for the log file, it is automatically given a unique name beginning with the characters "MSI" and ending with the *.LOG* file extension. The log file is created in the *%temp%* folder.

Reference Data Installation Options

You must specify which version of the reference data product to install, such as SP3D, SM3D, or MHE. The argument that controls the version is **PRODUCTTOINSTALL**.

Example of running reference data silent install from the command line:

To install SP3D reference data in default location (C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D):

msiexec /i "<path>\S3DReferenceData.msi" SLAACCEPT=Yes ADDLOCAL=ALL
PRODUCTTOINSTALL=SP3D /qn

Name Generator Installation Options

The name generator requires a separate installation procedure after installing the reference data. You must include the **NAMEGENUSERNAME** and **NAMEGENPASSWORD** arguments when installing the name generator.

Example of running name generator silent install from the command line:

To install the Name Generator in default location (C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D):

- On the 32-bit computers, you can use the following command-line argument: msiexec /i "<path>\S3DNameGenerator.msi" SLAACCEPT=Yes ADDLOCAL=ALL NAMEGENUSERNAME=<mydomain\myuserid> NAMEGENPASSWORD=<mypassword> /qn
- You can also use the above command-line argument on the 64-bit computers to install the 64-bit version of the Name Generator.
- To install the 32-bit version of the Name Generator on the 64-bit computers, use the following command-line argument:

Msiexec.exe /i "<path>\S3DNameGenerator.msi" SLAACCEPT=Yes ADDLOCAL=ALL X86NAMEGEN=true NAMEGENUSERNAME=<mydomain\myuserid> NAMEGENPASSWORD=<mypassword> /qn To install Symbols and Custom Documentation in default location (C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D):

msiexec /i "<path>\S3DReferenceData.msi" SLAACCEPT=Yes
ADDLOCAL=Symbols,CustomDoc /qn

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations (on page 21) Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185) Monitoring the Databases (on page 63) Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008 (on page 48)

Silent Installation for Service Packs

You can use the Windows Installer to install the service pack software using a command line rather than the normal user interface. One advantage of using a command line to install software is that you can perform unattended installations. The Windows Installer and the SP3DHotFixInstaller command line options do not run from the UNC path. You need to map to a drive letter. If errors occur during installation, they are logged to your temp folder in a file called patchinstaller.log.

The following command line parameters and arguments can be used with the Windows Installer executable *msiexec.exe*) to perform a silent service pack installation of the product:

To get list of command line arguments for msiexec.exe, enter in a command window:

msiexec.exe /?

Syntax

msiexec.exe /update "<path and file name of msp file>" /qn

Required arguments (for silent install):

/qn

/update <path and file name of msp file>

Where <command option> is:

- Installation This installs the service pack or hot fix.
- Referencedata This installs the Reference Data service pack or hot fix.
- ProgrammingResources This installs the Programming Resources service pack or hot fix.

Optional Arguments

/L Logging file. /L</or>

IMPORTANT The arguments for the command line are case-sensitive.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations (on page 21) Monitoring the Databases (on page 63) Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008 (on page 48)

SECTION 6 Setting Up the Database

SmartPlant 3D currently supports Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8.

NOTE When using the software in a Global Workshare Configuration (GWC), you must install Oracle Enterprise Edition, which includes a fix for a memory leak in streams. Please consult your Oracle support representative for more information.

Installing any database involves significant decisions regarding the size of the database, the maximum number of users, the frequency of automatic backups, and other important issues. Therefore, the following sections provide only suggestions for tuning your database configuration to work with SmartPlant software. The ultimate database creation and configuration depends on the policies and standards at your company.

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008

When you install Windows Server 2008 R2, most of the services are disabled by default, including MSDTC network access. If you are using COM+/DTC, you are most likely to receive errors when you attempt to perform distributed actions, including flowing transactions to another computer or talking to a resource manager such as SQL Server on another computer. To enable your distributed scenarios, you need to enable MSDTC network transactions.

See Also

Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008 (on page 39) Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Database Server Only) (on Configure the Distributed COM Users Group (on page 42)

Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008

The following procedures for enabling network access are required only if you are using Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit) on the computer.

Enable COM+ Network Access

- 1. Open the **Control Panel**.
- 2. Click Turn Windows features on or off to open the Server Manager.
- 3. On the Roles page in Server Manager, click Add Roles. The Add Roles Wizard opens.
- 4. Ensure that you have completed the preceding steps listed on the **Before You Begin** page, and click **Next**.
- 5. On the Select Server Roles page, select Application Server and click Next.

NOTE If the server finds any of the required features for Application Server are missing, a prompt is displayed informing you to install those features. Click **Add Required Features** to allow the server to install them automatically.

- 6. On the Application Server page, click Next.
- 7. On the Select Role Services page, select COM+ Network Access, and click Next.

- 8. Confirm your installation selections and click Install.
- 9. After the installation is complete, click **Close** to exit the wizard.

NOTE If Application Server is already enabled on Windows Server 2008, follow these steps to enable COM+ Network Access:

- 10. Open the **Control Panel**.
- 11. Click Turn Windows features on or off to open the Server Manager.
- 12. Click Roles > Application Server.
- 13. In the Role Services section, click 🍻 Add Role Services.
- 14. On the Select Role Services page, select COM+ Network Access, and click Install.

Enable Network DTC Access

- 1. Open **Component Services** by clicking **Start > Administrative Tools > Component Services**.
- 2. In the console tree, expand Component Services > Computers > My Computer > Distributed Transaction Coordinator > Local DTC.
- 3. Right-click Local DTC, and select Properties.
- 4. In the **Security** tab of the **Local DTC Properties** dialog box, enable **Network DTC Access**, and click **OK**.

An MSDTC Service message box is displayed.

- 5. Click **Yes** to stop and restart the MSDTC service.
- 6. Click Yes after the MSDTC service is restarted.

IMPORTANT If you have additional resource manager services that participate in the distributed transactions, you must stop and restart those services as well.

See Also

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (on page 39)

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Database Server Only)

You must configure the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC).

- 1. Open **Component Services** by clicking **Start > Administrative Tools > Component Services**.
- 2. In the console tree, expand Component Services > Computers > My Computer > Distributed Transaction Coordinator > Local DTC.

Component Services		
🌬 File Action View W	/indow H	Help
🗢 🔿 🖄 🖬 🗟 📔	? 🗊	
📄 Console Root		Name
🖃 💩 Component Services		👰 Local DTC
🖃 🧰 Computers		
🖃 🌉 My Computer		
🗄 🔛 🛄 COM+ Ap	plications	
🕀 🔛 DCOM Config		
王 🚞 Running P	rocesses	
🖃 🧮 Distributed	d Transac	
🕀 🔛 Local	DTC	
🕀 🛃 Event Viewer (Local)	New W	/indow from Here
🛨 🤍 Services (Local)	Proper	ties
	Help	

- 3. Right-click Local DTC and select Properties from the shortcut menu.
- 4. Select the Security tab of the Local DTC Properties dialog box.
- 5. In the Security Settings section, enable Network DTC Access.
- 6. In the Client and Administration section, enable Allow Remote Clients and Allow Remote Administration.
- 7. In the **Transaction Manager Communication** section, enable the **Allow Outbound**, **Allow Inbound**, and **No Authentication Required** options.
- 8. Verify that Enable XA Transactions is enabled.
- 9. In the **DTC Logon Account** section, verify that **NT AUTHORITY/Network Service** appears in the **Account** box.
- 10. Click **OK**.

An MSDTC Service message box is displayed.

- 11. Click **Yes** to stop and restart the MSDTC service.
- 12. Click **OK** after the MSDTC service is restarted.

See Also

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (on page 39)

Configure the Distributed COM Users Group

You must add users to the Distributed COM Users group.

- 1. Open Computer Management by clicking Start > Administrative Tools > Computer Management.
- 2. Under Computer Management, expand System Tools > Local Users and Groups.
- 3. Under the Local Users and Groups node, click Groups.



- 4. In the right pane of the **Computer Management** window, double-click **Distributed COM Users**.
- 5. In the Distributed COM Users Properties dialog box, click Add.
- In the Select Users, Computers, or Groups dialog box, type the user accounts you want to add to the Distributed COM Users Group into the Enter the object names to select box.
 TIP You can enter multiple accounts by separating each one with a semicolon. For example, you can type Domain1\User1;Domain1\User2;Domain1/User3, and so on.
- 7. Click OK to close the Select Users, Computers, or Groups dialog box.
- 8. Click OK to close the Distributed COM Users Properties dialog box.

See Also

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (on page 39)

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Database Server

The following prerequisite software is required in order to install and use the software on a database server:

- Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 Service Pack 1
- Adobe Acrobat Reader (available from www.adobe.com)

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100)

Install Microsoft .NET Framework (Database Server)

Stop any real-time virus checkers before you proceed because they can interfere with installation.

- 1. Log on to the computer as an administrator.
- 2. Start Server Manager.
- 3. Select Features in the console tree.
- 4. Select Add Features in the Features Summary area. *The Add Features Wizard appears.*
- 5. Select .NET Framework 3.5.1 Features from the list of features that you can install.
- 6. Click Install and follow the prompts.

NOTE The software also supports the latest .NET Framework service packs. Run Windows Update to check for the latest .NET service pack and fixes.

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Database Server (on page 43)

Installing and Configuring Microsoft SQL Server 2008

Because system configurations, database software, and individual company standards vary, use this section as a checklist instead of step-by-step instructions for SQL Server 2008 SP3 (64-bit) running on a Windows Server 2008 R2 operating system. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

If you are using a Global Workshare Configuration, you need to install the Enterprise Edition of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 3 for your Host and Satellite locations.

NOTE Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 requires XML 6.0 and will automatically install it as part of the SQL Server 2008 Prerequisite installation.

IMPORTANT There are internationalization considerations concerning the SQL Server collation settings you specify that relate to reference data, using SmartPlant Enterprise integrated systems, Global Workshare Configuration, multiple locales, backup/restore, reports, and upgrading to future releases. Please contact Integraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

Install Microsoft SQL Server 2008

1. Insert your SQL Server DVD and start the setup program.

🚼 SQL Server Installation Center			
Planning Installation Maintenance	•	Hardware and Software Requirements View the hardware and software requirements.	~
Tools Resources	9	Security Documentation View the security documentation.	
Advanced Options	•	Online Release Notes View the latest information about the release.	
	9	System Configuration Checker Launch a tool to check for conditions that prevent a successful SQL Server installation.	
SQL Server 2008	F	Install Upgrade Advisor	~

2. From the **Planning** page, select **System Configuration Checker** to check for pre-requisite applications as well as identify potential installation problems.

NOTE You may be asked to restart your computer if any pre-requisite applications were installed.

3. Click Installation and select the New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation option.



- 4. As you go through the installation process, make sure you install the **Setup Support Files** and review any Setup Support Rules that identify potential problems.
- 5. When you get to Feature Selection, select the features below.
 - Database Engine Services
 - SQL Server Replication (required if the SQL server instance is set up for the Global Workshare configuration)
 - Client Tools Connectivity
 - Management Tools Basic



6. On the **Server Configuration** page, specify a domain account name with administrative privileges on the system to be used. Also, set **Automatic** as the **Startup Type** and continue.

TIPS

 If you are not sure, you can use NT AUTHORITY\NETWORK SERVICE or NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM and change the login later on the service.

- A domain user account offers more flexibility and is typically used because many server-to-server activities can be performed only with a domain user account, including remote procedure calls, replication, and backing up network drives.
- 7. Click the **Collation** tab. Use locale-specific collation. These collation settings include the character set, sort order, and other locale-specific settings.



8. On the **Database Engine Configuration** page, identify at least one SQL Server Administrator. Select **Windows authentication mode**.

}	Account Provisioning Data Directories FILESTREAM				
	Specify the authentication mode and administrators for the Datal				
$\left\{ \right\ $	Authentication Mode				
ξ	Windows authentication mode				
}	Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authent				
	Specify the password for the SQL Server system administrator (sa)				
\$	Enter password:				
	Confirm password:				
	Specify SQL Server administrators				
$\left \right $					
ξ.					
21					
ξl					
3					
3	Add Current User Add Remove				
	Add Current User Add Remove				

- 9. Complete the installation as prompted.
- 10. If any errors occur during installation, refer to the **Summary Log** for more information and contact Intergraph Support for further assistance.
- Install any required service packs or upgrades for SQL Server 2008. See Install any Required SQL Server 2008 Upgrades (on page 47). Currently Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Service Pack 2.

Install any Required SQL Server 2008 Upgrades

Your version of SmartPlant 3D may require an upgrade or service pack of Microsoft SQL Server 2008. See *SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations* (on page 21) for version information. If you do need to upgrade, go to the Microsoft website and follow instructions provided in the Microsoft Download Center.

Verify Automatic Startup of Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Services

- 1. Open **Control Panel > System and Security > Administrative Tools**, and then double-click **Services**.
- 2. Verify that the **Status** field is set to **Started** and the **Startup Type** field is set to **Automatic**, for each of the following services:
 - Distributed Transaction Coordinator
 - SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)

TIP The MSSQL service is appended with the named instance you specified when you installed Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3. For example, if you installed SQL Server 2008 as an instance named **Instance1**, the service displays as **MSSQL\$Instance1**.

- 3. To change the **Status** or **Startup Type** fields, right-click the service name, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
 - a. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
 - b. In the Service status section, click Start.
 - c. Click OK.

Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service

If the SQL Server 2008 is not registered in the SQL Server Management Studio on the server computer, you must register it before using the SQL Server 2008 software. Perform the following procedure on the server computer to register the SQL Server in the SQL Server Management Studio console.

- 1. Open SQL Server Management Studio and select View > Registered Servers.
- 2. Right-click **Central Management Servers** and select **Register Central Management Services**.

The system displays the **New Server Registration** dialog box.

- 3. On the **General** tab, enter the name of the server you want to register or select a server from the **Server name** drop-down list.
- 4. Click Save.

NOTE Before exiting SQL Server Management Studio, perform the steps in Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008 (on page 48).

Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008

Perform the following steps on the SmartPlant 3D server computer.

- 1. Open Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio and expand the listing for your database server in the left tree view.
- 2. In the tree view, expand the listing under **Security** and right-click **Logins**.
- 3. Select New Login from the shortcut menu.
- 4. On the **Login New** dialog box, enter the user account you want to be assigned administrative privileges in the **Login name** text box. For example, type **AdminUser1**.

2			
{L	.ogin name:		ŀ
Į.	Windows authentication	1	ł
ξ.	SQL Server authentication		1
2	Password:		ĺ
Č.	Confirm password:		l
Ş.	Specify old password	1	l
	Old password:		Į
Ş.	Enforce password policy		2
Ŷ.	Enforce password expirat	tion	
ķ	🔽 User must change passw	vord at next login	ł
Ì	Mapped to certificate		Į
Į.	Mapped to asymmetric key		
Ś	Map to Credential		
{	Mapped Credentials	Credential Provider	l

- 5. Select Server Roles under the Select a page heading to display the Server Roles list.
- 6. In the Server Roles list, select the sysadmin check box.



NOTE Standard users need db_owner and public database role membership mapping to each one of the SmartPlant 3D databases. Administrators need only the *sysadmin* role.

7. Click OK.

Create a SQL Server 2008 Database Alert

When the SmartPlant 3D database server is running low on disk space, the software begins to display error messages since data can no longer be persisted or logged. Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3, however, does not issue any particular alerts for the workstation computers when the disk is full or becoming limited.

Using the Performance Monitor, the SmartPlant 3D administrator can create a Data Collector Set that contains an alert to be issued when a threshold value for a System Monitor has been reached. In response to the alert, System Monitor can launch an application to handle the alert condition.

You must perform the following procedure on the SmartPlant 3D server computer.

- 1. Open Control Panel > System and Security > Administrative Tools > Performance Monitor.
- 2. Expand **Monitoring Tools** in the **Performance** tree view and start the **Performance Monitor**.
- 3. Expand Data Collector Sets in the tree view and right-click on User Defined.



4. Select **New > Data Collector Set** from the shortcut menu.

Enter the name you want to use for the data collector set, click **Create manually** (Advanced), and then click **Next**.

1000	a ana ang ang ang ang ang ang ang ang an
(Ho	w would you like to create this new data collector set?
5	
Ş	
ίNε	ame:
(🖺)
2 🛛	lew Data Collector Set (1)
} [
j –	1
<u>}</u>	
) 💿	Create from a template (Recommended)
2	How do I work with templates?
8	•
į 💿	Create manually (Advanced) 🤰 🤰
ļ	How do I choose data collectors manually?
Same and	and a second

- 5. Click Check Performance Counter and click Next.
- 6. Click Add to open the Add Counter dialog box.

7. Set the database server name in the **Select counters from computer** field. Select the Microsoft SQL Server 2008 object in the **Available counters** section.

Available counters a succession of stress Select counters from computer: <Local computer> Browse SQLAgent:Jobs SQLAgent:JobSteps SQLAgent:Statistics SQLServer:Access Methods SQLServer:Backup Device SQLServer:Broker Activation SQLServer:Broker Statistics SOI Server:Broker TO Statistics Instances of selected object: Total <All instances> 0 Search • Add >>

8. In the **Select counters from list** drop-down list, select a counter and click **Add**. The new counter displays in the **Added counters** list.

TIP Use CTRL+ or SHIFT+ to select multiple objects.

- After all counters have been added, click OK to close the Add Counters dialog box.
 NOTE To add local counters from a remote computer, you need to have either of the following permissions on it:
 - Local administrator privilege
 - Be a member of the Performance Monitor Users local group.

10. Under the **Performance counters** list, select either **Above** or **Below** for the **Alert when** value.



- 11. In the **Limit** box, enter a threshold value. Depending on the object you selected, the alert will be generated when the value for the counter is more than or less than the threshold value. Click **Next** to continue.
- 12. Click Finish. Your new data collector set displays in the User Defined page.
- 13. To configure the alerts, double-click on your data collector set name and then right-click on the data collector. Select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 14. On the **Alerts** tab, you can set additional alerts and define the unit of time for the duration of the sample interval.

Sample interval:	Units:	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
3 15	Seconds	
the second and and	and a second	an all

- 15. Set options in the **Alert Action** and **Alert Task** tabs to specify the actions to occur each time the alert is triggered.
- 16. Click **OK** to close the **Properties** dialog box and activate the alert settings.

NOTE For more information about using System Monitor and setting up SQL Server 2008 alerts, see the documentation delivered with Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 and Windows Server 2008 R2.

SQL Server Port Assignments

The SQL Server database uses the following port assignments.

NOTE This assignment may not be required if SQL Server is not used as a database within your SmartPlant Enterprise implementation.

Port Number	TCP/UDP	Communication	Comments
1433	TCP	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SQL Server

SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility

The SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility provides a way for you to specify the default collation that should be used by the Database Wizard, Project Management, and the Bulkload utility for creating databases. This utility creates a copy of the delivered schema templates (*AppRepos.dat* and *CatalogDB.dat*) with the desired SQL Server collation. Any site, catalog, model, and reports databases and schemas created from these templates will use the specified SQL Server collation.

Only homogeneous configurations are supported at this time, not heterogeneous. For more information see *Internationalization* (on page 17).

See Also

Change Database Collation (on page 53) *SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility Dialog Box* (on page 52)

SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility Dialog Box

The SQL Server Collation Utility provides a way for you to specify the default collation that should be used by the Database Wizard, Project Management, and the Bulkload utility for creating databases.

Options:

Collation - Specifies the collation to be used for the database template. See the Microsoft documentation for more information on collation.

SmartPlant 3D does not support case-sensitive collation.

Existing AppRepos template - Specifies the path and file name of the existing *AppRepos.dat* template to be copied and converted to the new collation.

New AppRepos template - Specifies the path and file name of the new *AppRepos.dat* template to be created. This name updates automatically to a new default whenever you change the value in the Collation field.

Existing CatalogDB template - Specifies the path and file name of the existing *CatalogDB.dat* template to be copied and converted to the new collation.

New AppRepos template - Specifies the path and file name of the new *CatalogDB.dat* template to be created. This name updates automatically to a new default whenever you change the value in the **Collation** field.

OK - Creates the new templates with the selected collation.

Cancel - Closes the SQL Server Collation Utility without creating any new templates.

Change Database Collation

- 1. Install SQL Server with locale-specific collation. These collation settings include the character set, sort order, and other locale-specific settings.
- 2. Install SmartPlant 3D client and server.
- 3. Click Start > All Programs > Intergraph SmartPlant 3D > Database Tools > SQL Server Collation Utility.

The SQL Server Collation Utility displays. See SQL Server 2008 Collation Utility Dialog Box (on page 52).

4. Specify the collation that you need.

The file names for the "new" templates update to reflect the selected collation automatically.

- 5. You can modify the default file names and paths.
- 6. Click **OK** to update the collation in the templates. These templates can now be used to create every SmartPlant 3D database in the correct collation for the project.
- 7. Click Start > All Programs > Intergraph SmartPlant 3D > Database Tools > Database Wizard.
- 8. Follow the steps to create a new site.
- 9. In the **Template file to be used to create site schema** field, select the new template with the desired SQL Server collation that you created with the SQL Server Collation Utility.

🚱 SmartPlant 3D Database Wizard	× 🔀
Create Site Database and Schema Enter the database type, site server name, database name, worksha	re location, name generater server, and template file.
Database type:	
MSSQL	
Create site database	
Site database <u>s</u> erver:	Site database n <u>a</u> me:
DOCUMENT1\HUNTSVILLE	KhrisTestSite
Site database workshare location:	Name rule ID:
Huntsville	1
Name generator server for site:	
DOCUMENT1	
Paths for site database files Physical database: Default SQL Location	Log file: Default SQL Location
Create site schema database Template file to be used to create site schema: DatabaseTemplates\Apprepos_Japanese_90_CI_AI_KS_WS.dat	
Site schema server:	Site schema name:
DOCUMENT1/HUNTSVILLE	KhrisTestSite_SCHEMA
Paths for site schema files Physical database: Default SQL Location	Log file: Default SQL Location
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel

10. When creating or restoring the catalog database for the new site, be sure to select the template with the correct collation. If the collation for the selected catalog does not match

the collation for the site, the following message appears: "The collation for the selected template, *CatalogDB.dat*, does not match the collation for the site. Please select another template."

NOTE This message also appears in the **Bulkload Utility** and in the **New Catalog** command in Project Management if the collation does not match the site.

- 11. When you create the plant, reports, and reports schemas in Project Management, SmartPlant 3D automatically uses the collation of the site database.
- 12. In the future, when you create additional sites or catalogs, remember to select the correct template with the desired collation.

See Also

Install Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (on page 44)

Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software

Because system configurations and individual company standards vary, use this section as a checklist instead of step-by-step instructions. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

NOTE Intergraph recommends that you set up the Windows server network before installing Oracle. Also, Oracle recommends a static IP address. You should install the Oracle server software as the local administrator, not as a domain user in the local Administrator Windows group. For more information, refer to your Oracle installation documentation.

IMPORTANT All domain verified user names and passwords must use ASCII7/English characters. Oracle does not support non-ASCII / English characters in domain user names or passwords and will not work. This limitation applies only to Oracle, not Intergraph.

Oracle Instances

If one server hosts the databases of several products, Intergraph recommends that each product database be a separate instance, each of which can host multiple plants.

The advantage of placing each product database in its own instance is that only the affected application will be off-line during backup, performance tuning, and other database maintenance activities. Additionally, global tuning parameters that apply to one instance can be tailored to the specific product requirements.

According to Oracle documentation, the only limit to the number of instances you can have on any machine is the availability of resources. However, the number of instances on one database server should be minimized because each additional instance puts additional load on the server.

Each instance adds redundant tablespaces, rollback segments, background processes, and memory requirements for each SGA (System Global Area). For this reason, you should start by putting the database of one product for several plants into a single instance. Then, when the number of plants increases, or a plant becomes very large, consider separating the database into new instances, adding server memory, or even adding database servers.

IMPORTANT

- Oracle recommends that database activity on the database server consume no more than 50 percent of the available memory. Refer to your Oracle documentation for specific requirements.
- There are Oracle restrictions for the database global name and corresponding database link name (they are required to match). There are three known restrictions on global database names:
- 1. No hyphens are allowed.
- 2. The computer name cannot start with a number.
- 3. There is a maximum of 30 characters for the name.

See Also

Configure Oracle Networking Components (on page 60) Verify Automatic Startup of Oracle Database Services (on page 61) Initialize the Oracle Database (on page 57)

Install Oracle Database Server Software 11g Release 2

During installation of the database components, setup displays various dialog boxes that prompt you for information. We recommend that you refer to your Oracle documentation for specific instructions concerning the dialog boxes and wizard pages. The steps below show an example installation using Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) server software with Patch 8.

Install Oracle Database Server Software 11g Release 2

- 1. Open the hosts file and enter the IP address and server host name. The hosts file is located in C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts.
- 2. Add the environment variable **ORACLE_HOSTNAME=**<*server name*> in the System Environment Variables.
- 3. Enter your security update information in the **Configure Security Updates** screen, and click **Next**.
- 4. Select Create and configure a database in the Select Installation Option screen, and click Next.
- 5. Select Server Class in the System Class screen, and click Next.
- 6. Select **Single instance database installation** in the **Grid Installation Options** screen, and click **Next**.
- 7. Select Advanced install in the Select Install Type screen, and click Next.
- 8. Select the installation language in the Select Product Languages screen, and click Next.
- 9. Select Enterprise Edition (3.34GB) in the Select Database Edition screen, and click Next.
- 10. Specify the **Oracle Base** location for the base folder and the **Software Location** for the home folder by browsing to the location.
- 11. Select General Purpose / Transaction Processing in the Select Configuration Type screen, and click Next.
- 12. Specify the Global database name and Oracle Service Identifier (SID) values in the Specify Database Identifiers screen.
- 13. Select the Memory tab on the Specify Configuration Options screen, and select the Enable Automatic Memory Management option. The percentage of memory allowed for an instance of Oracle should not exceed 40%. If you have more than one Oracle instance on this server, the allocated memory should not exceed 40% of the system memory.
- 14. Select the **Character sets** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and select the **Use Unicode (AL32UTF8)** option.

NOTES

- All products in SmartPlant Enterprise that participate in integration should set their encodings to Use Unicode (AL32UTF8) for the Database Character Set option and to AL16UTF16 - Unicode UTF-16 Universal character set for the National Character Set option.
- For more information about the Character Set options, see your Oracle installation documentation.
- 15. Select the **Security** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and choose your security settings option.
- 16. Select the **Sample Schemas** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and select the **Create database with sample schemas** option, and click **Next**.

- 17. Select the **Use Database Control for database management** option on the **Specify Management Options** screen. You can also enable notifications through email with this option.
- 18. Select **File System** in the **Specify Database Storage Options** screen, and specify a database file location. Click **Next**.
- 19. Specify your recovery options in the Specify Recovery Options screen, and click Next.
- 20. Specify your schema passwords in the **Specify Schema Passwords** screen, and click **Next**. You must choose either the **Use different passwords for these accounts** or **Use the same password for all accounts** option.

The software checks that all prerequisite software is installed on the computer.

- 21. Click Finish in the Summary screen.
- 22. Click **Close** after the installation process is finished.

For more information on creating an Oracle database for use with Intergraph software, see *Global Workshare User's Guide (Oracle)*.

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software (on page 55)

Initialize the Oracle Database

After the Oracle server software is installed and configured (that is, you can connect from a client to the Oracle database), you must configure the database to run with SmartPlant 3D software.

The SmartPlant 3D Reference Data Installation delivers the following sample script files to the <*Product Folder*>\Tools\OracleScriptsToInitDB\Roles folder. These files must be run in the following order:

- 1. SP3DUser_ROLES.sql
- 2. SP3DProjectAdminstrator_ROLES.sql
- 3. SP3DUser.sql
- 4. SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql

Use these script files to create the necessary schemas, users, and roles that are used to run the software on Oracle. The delivered script files, however, are only samples and must be edited to fit your server configurations.

CAUTIONS

- An administrative user must run the scripts on the server. Before proceeding, place a copy
 of each of the sample script files on the server computer.
- The scripts must be run in the order listed because previous scripts create items that are used in subsequent scripts. Do not deviate from the following sequence of steps.

Create the Roles Needed for SmartPlant 3D Users

- 1. Log on to the Oracle database server computer using the local administrative account.
- 2. Open **SQL Plus**. The **SQL Plus** dialog box displays.
- 3. In the User Name field, type SYS as SYSDBA or SYSOPER.
- 4. In the **Password** field, type the password for the SYS account.
- At the SQL prompt, type @<File Location>:\SP3DUser_ROLES.sql, and press Enter.
 TIP For example, if you placed a copy of the script file in the root folder on the C drive, type @C:\SP3DUSER_ROLES.sql.

- 6. After the script finishes, type @<*File Location*>:\SP3DProjectAdministrator_ROLES.sql, and press Enter.
- 7. After the second script finishes, click **File > Exit**.

NOTES

- If SP3D roles already exist on the Oracle service, you should adjust the roles using the Adjust_SP3DRoles.sql file. For more information, see Adjust Roles and Users (on page 59).
- Users with existing Oracle databases must grant EXECUTE ANY TYPE privilege to the SP3DUSER role when upgrading to SmartPlant 3D version 2007 (7.0) or higher by executing the following statement in SQLPLUS:

GRANT EXECUTE ANY TYPE TO SP3DUSER;

Create the Users Needed for SmartPlant 3D

- 1. Log on to the Oracle database server computer using the local administrative account.
- 2. Navigate to the SP3DUser.sql script file, and open it in Notepad.
- 3. Edit the external user identified in the file as needed. Use the following syntax: *DOMAIN NAME\USERNAME*, and then click **File > Save**.

NOTE Any typed alpha character must be capitalized.

- 4. Open SQL Plus. The Log On dialog box appears.
- 5. In the User Name field, type SYS AS SYSDBA.
- 6. In the **Password** field, type the password for the SYS account.
- At the SQL prompt, type @<File Location>:\SP3DUser.sql, and press Enter.
 For example, if you placed a copy of the script file in the root folder on the C drive, type @C:\SP3DUser.sql.
- 8. After the script finishes, click **File > Exit**.

Create the Administrative User

- 1. Log on to the Oracle database server computer using the local administrative account.
- 2. Navigate to the SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql script file, and open it in Notepad.
- 3. Edit the external user identified in the file as needed. Use the following syntax: *DOMAIN NAME\USERNAME*, and then click **File > Save.**
- **NOTE** Any typed alpha character must be capitalized.
- 4. Open SQL Plus. The Log On dialog box appears.
- 5. In the User Name field, type SYS AS SYSDBA.
- 6. In the **Password** field, type the password for the SYS account.
- 7. At the SQL prompt, type @<*File Location*>:\SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql and press Enter.

For example, if you placed a copy of the script file in the root folder on the C drive, you type **@C:\SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql**.

8. After the script finishes, click **File > Exit**.

NOTE If the Project Administrator user is already created on the Oracle service, you should use the Adjust_SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql file to adjust the login. For more information, see *Adjust Roles and Users* (on page 59).

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software (on page 106) *Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software* (on page 55)

Adjust Roles and Users

If the SmartPlant 3D roles and project administrator logins are already created on the Oracle service, use the following procedures to adjust them.

Adjust SP3D Roles

NOTE During setup, SmartPlant 3D delivers the Adjust_SP3DRoles.SQL script files in the folder <*Product Folder*>\ProjectMgmt\Tools\ScriptsToInitOracleDB\ AdjustSP3DRoles.

- 1. Log on to the Oracle database server computer using the local administrative account.
- 2. Open SQL Plus. The Log On dialog box appears.
- 3. In the User Name field, type SYS as SYSDBA.
- 4. In the **Password** field, type the password for the SYS account.
- 5. At the SQL prompt, type @<*File Location***:****Adjust_SP3DRoles.sql** and press **Enter**.

TIP For example, if you placed a copy of the script file in the root folder on the C drive, you type **@C:\Adjust_SP3DRoles.sql**.

6. After the script finishes, click **File > Exit**.

Adjust Project Administrator Users

NOTE During setup, SmartPlant 3D delivers the Adjust_SP3DProjectAdministrator.SQL script files in the folder <*Product Folder*>\ProjectMgmt\Tools\ScriptsToInitOracleDB\ AdjustSP3DProjectAdministrator.

- 1. Log on to the Oracle database server computer using the local administrative account.
- 2. Navigate to the SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql script file, and open it in Notepad.
- 3. Edit the external user identified in the file as needed. Use the following syntax: *DOMAIN NAME\USERNAME*, and then click **File > Save**.

NOTE Any typed alpha character must be capitalized.

- 4. Open SQL Plus. The Log On dialog box appears.
- 5. In the User Name field, type SYS as SYSDBA.
- 6. In the **Password** field, type the password for the SYS account.
- 7. At the SQL prompt, type @<*File Location*>:\Adjust_SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql, and press Enter.

TP F or example, if you placed a copy of the script file in the root folder on the C drive, type **@C:\Adjust_SP3DProjectAdministrator.sql**.

8. After the script finishes, click **File > Exit**.

Configure Oracle Networking Components

Oracle Net combines configuration abilities with component control to provide an integrated environment for configuring and managing client connections to services via a net service name. The SmartPlant 3D software uses the Oracle net service to establish and maintain network sessions from client applications to the Oracle database server. After a network connection is established, this utility acts as a data courier for the client application and the database server.

If you follow the procedures provided to *Install Oracle Database Server Software 11g Release 2* (on page 56) and *Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2* (on page 106), the Oracle Networking Components should be configured correctly.

Oracle Net Configuration Assistant

The Oracle Net Configuration Assistant allows you to configure the listening protocol address and service information for an Oracle database. See the *Oracle Net Services Administrator's Guide* in your Oracle documentation for more information about using this utility and creating net service name connections.

IMPORTANT If you are using Global Workshare, you should configure a net service for each server involved in the workshare environment.

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software (on page 55) Configure the Oracle Client (on page 107) Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2 (on page 106)

Oracle Database Port Assignments

TCP

The Oracle database uses the following port assignments.

NOTE These assignments may not be required if Oracle is not used as a database within your SmartPlant Enterprise implementation.

IMPORTANT For the Oracle components listed below, port assignments can be custom-configured as indicated. For each component, additional information can be found in the cited Oracle documentation. These Oracle references contain links to additional Oracle content, providing important considerations, including discussions about other affected components that may require matching port changes to be made, as well as the instructions for changing the assigned ports.

Port Number TCP/UDP Communication Comments

80

From workstation to server For Oracle HTTP. Can be reassigned. Configurable port range is 80, 7777-7877, 8888. For information, see http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/E1 2524_01/core.1013/e10403/portnums. htm#i653967.

1521, 1526	TCP	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For Oracle Client SQL Net Connection (1521 is default). Can be changed using Oracle Net Configuration Utility to port within range 1024-65535. For information, see http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/E1 1882_01/install.112/e16773/ports.htm# CIHCCJCF.
1158	TCP	From workstation to server	For Oracle Enterprise Console (1158 is default). Configured during database installation. Can be changed within range 5500-5519. For information, see http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/E1 1882_01/install.112/e16773/ports.htm# CIHCCJCF.
5560, 5580	TCP	From workstation to server	For Oracle SQL Plus (5560 is default). Can be changed within range 5560-5579. For information , see http://download.oracle.com/docs/html/ B13805_02/ports.htm#BEHFDBEE – section D.5.
443	ТСР	From workstation to server	For Oracle HTTP Server SSL Port (443 is default). Can be set to either 443 or 4443. For information, see http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/E1 2524_01/core.1013/e10403/portnums. htm#i653967.

Verify Automatic Startup of Oracle Database Services

- 1. Open the Control Panel and double-click Administrative Tools.
- 2. Double-click Services.
- 3. Verify that the **Status** field is set to **Started**, and the **Startup Type** field is set to **Automatic**, for each of the following services:

Distributed Transaction Coordinator

OracleMTSRecoveryService

OracleService<SID>

OracleDBConsole<SID>

Oracleoracle_home>TNSListener

NOTES

- The OracleService is your Oracle database instance. It is appended with the named Oracle System identifier (SID) you specified when you created the Oracle database. For example, if your SID is **Plant1**, the service appears as **OracleServicePlant1**.
- The TNSListener service is required to allow clients to connect to the Oracle database.
- 4. To change the **Status** or **Startup Type** fields, right-click the service name, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.

- 5. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
- 6. In the Service status section, click Start.
- 7. Click OK.

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Server Software (on page 55)

Create the Oracle Streams Tablespace

Each replicated Plant configuration can use its own Oracle user for the Oracle tablespace and the stream administrator. We highly recommend that you separate them this way. You must perform the following procedure at the Host and all the Satellite locations that will participate in Global Workshare.

- 1. Open **SQL** ***Plus** and connect as an administrative user who can create users, grant privileges, create tablespaces, and alter users.
- 2. At the SQL prompt, type a statement similar to the following to create a Streams tablespace: CREATE TABLESPACE STRADMABC TBS

```
LOGGING
DATAFILE 'c:\oracledatafiles\STRADMABC_TBS.ora' SIZE 300M
REUSE
AUTOEXTEND ON EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL;
```

3. Repeat the procedure at each database that will participate in the Workshare environment.

NOTE Specify an individual tablespace name for each Plant configuration to match the Streams administrator name for each respective Plant configuration. For example, with the Streams administrator STRADMABC, you need to create the Streams tablespace named STRADMABC_TBS.

Create the Oracle Streams Administrator

You must perform the following procedure at the Host and all the Satellite locations.

- 1. Open **SQL** ***Plus** and connect as an administrative user who can create users, grant privileges, create tablespaces, and alter users.
- 2. Create the Streams administrator. At the SQL prompt, type the following statement, and press **Enter**:

```
CREATE USER STRADMABC
IDENTIFIED BY password
DEFAULT TABLESPACE STRADMABC_TBS
QUOTA UNLIMITED ON STRADMABC_TBS;
```

3. Grant the CONNECT, RESOURCE, and DBA roles to the Streams administrator. At the SQL prompt, type the following statement, and press **Enter**:

```
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE, DBA TO STRADMABC;
```

 Use the GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE procedure in the DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH package to grant the required privileges to the Streams administrator. At the SQL prompt, type the following statement, and press Enter:

```
BEGIN
DBMS_STREAMS_AUTH.GRANT_ADMIN_PRIVILEGE (
grantee => ' STRADMABC',
grant_privileges => true);
```

```
END;
```

5. To assist with administration, grant the following roles to the Streams administrator. At the SQL prompt, type the following statements, and press **Enter**:

```
GRANT SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE
to STRADMABC;
GRANT SELECT ANY DICTIONARY
to STRADMABC;
```

6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 to set up a Streams administrator on each of the databases that will participate in the Workshare.

NOTE Specify any Streams administrator user name for each replicated Plant configuration like STRADMABC when you create the Streams administrator. STRADMABC is the user name used in Project Management when the Plant is duplicated and this user name will be used when it generates the replication scripts. You can define your own password (in Step 2 - IDENTIFIED BY) for the STRADMABC user, but the password has to be the same at all locations.

Monitoring the Databases

You can use the following guidelines for setting up and monitoring your databases. Because there are many viable hardware and software configurations that you can use to set up the databases, refer to the documentation for your components for more information on performance and scalability issues.

IMPORTANT Database administrators should continuously monitor the status of SmartPlant 3D databases, especially as the project grows. If you are using a Global Workshare environment, database administrators must ensure that the replication process is functioning.

To achieve adequate performance and measurements while monitoring the system, use the settings outlined in Set Up the Database Server.

See Also

Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185) Disk Usage (on page 64) Disk I/O (on page 63)

Disk I/O

Data file and log file location and sizing are critical to obtaining optimal performance. I/O is one of the most common bottlenecks in database servers. Consequently, sizing I/O is critical to performance.

CAUTION Disk drives should not be run at more than 75% of the maximum I/O capacity.

The two types of I/O are Random I/Os and Sequential I/Os. The type of I/O determines the number of I/Os per second that a disk drive can handle. Random I/Os require a longer time to complete than sequential I/Os.

Random I/Os

The amount of time spent performing random I/Os is governed by the time it takes to perform the seek operations. Since the random I/O involves requests for data on different parts of the disk, most of the time spent in the I/O will be the seek time. If a disk drive takes 10 milliseconds (averaging read and write), it is theoretically possible to perform 100 random seeks per second (1/.001 sec), excluding such things as overhead associated with the I/O bus or latencies

associated with processing the I/O. Queuing begins as you get closer to the theoretical limit of the disk drive. As queuing occurs, the I/O latency increases and database performance begins to suffer.

NOTE You can increase the system's random I/O capacity by spreading the data across multiple files or install the data files on a RAID array.

Data files are mostly accessed by random I/Os.

Sequential I/Os

Because there is no seek operation involved in sequential I/O, a disk drive can handle several hundred sequential I/Os per second without seeing increasing latencies. Therefore, using sequential I/O whenever possible can greatly improve the performance of the disk drives. Microsoft SQL Server and Oracle keep a log of the transactions; this log is primarily sequential to take advantage of sequential I/Os.

IMPORTANT In order to achieve maximum performance, the data file and log file must not be on the same physical drive.

See Also

Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185) Monitoring the Databases (on page 63) Disk Usage (on page 64)

Disk Usage

Disk usage should remain under 85% of the maximum disk capacity, and the partition should not be compressed.

Sizing the Files

With Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3, a database is created by default with a data file of 1MB and a log file of 1MB.

NOTE A database can be associated to more than one data file and more than one log file.

Both files are set to grow by 10% increments until space is no longer available on the drive. These defaults, however, are not adequate for monitoring or for a production system. When the data or log files are growing, the process may consume a very large amount of server resources and slow down the interactive users or perturb the monitoring performed on the system. As a result, we recommend that you set the size of the files to avoid automatic growth.

NOTE Set the size to the maximum anticipated size of the file. Set the growth increment to size of the available space or 85% of the capacity of the drive.

If automatic file growth occurs, re-evaluate the situation and try to set more accurate sizes or plan to add more capacity for your database.

Determining RAID Configuration

Use the following database activity considerations to determine the appropriate RAID configuration for optimum performance:

- Model Database High level of reads and writes (select, insert, update, and delete activities).
- Catalog Database Medium to Low level of reads and writes (select, insert, update, and delete activities). Activities such as bulkload and copy to catalog are write activities. Both can write a significant amount of data.

- Catalog Schema Low level of reads and very Low level of writes. Activities such as bulkload are used to write occasionally, but the amount of data is relatively small.
- Site Very Low level of reads and writes. While the Site is not read-only, the write activity is limited to a maximum of several rows per week.
- Site Schema Very Low level of reads with no writes.
- Report Database and Report Schema Read only. They contain views that are composed of queries mainly from the Site, Catalog, and Model Databases.

NOTE SQL Server *tempdb* has a high level of read and write.

The following table is based on a SQL Server setup and shows some reasonable orders of magnitude for small pilots based on testing conducted by Intergraph Process, Power & Marine. The most critical files for performances and monitoring are isolated on their own physical drives (the G, H, I, and J drives) while the less critical files share two drives (the E and F drives). The operating system, SQL server and paging files are installed on their own drives.

File	Initial Size	Growth Increment	Drive
Model data	10 GB	1 GB	G
Model log	1 GB	500 MB	Н
Catalog data	1 GB	500 MB	I
Catalog log	500 MB	100 MB	J
Catalog schema data	Default	Default	E
Catalog schema log	Default	Default	F
Site data	50 MB	10 MB	E
Site log	50 MB	10 MB	F
Site schema	Default	Default	E
Site schema log	Default	Default	F
Report data	Default	Default	E
Report log	N/A	N/A	F
Temp DB data	50 MB	50 MB	E
Temp DB log	50 MB	50 MB	F

NOTES

- The size of your Model database log file depends on your backup strategy. For more
 information about backing up your SmartPlant 3D data, see the *Project Management User's Guide,* available from Help > Printable Guides.
- Tempdb size is reset to the default every time the server is re-started.

See Also

SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations (on page 21) Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185) Monitoring the Databases (on page 63) Assign System Administrator Privileges for SQL Server 2008 (on page 48)

Install Smart 3D Reference Data

If you are installing the Smart 3D Reference Data software on a computer running Windows Server 2008, you must first enable COM+ Network and DTC access, then manually configure the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) service, and add the necessary users to the Distributed COM Users group. For more information, see *Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008* (on page 39).

Prior to installing Smart 3D Reference Data on the database server, verify that the server computer meets the required hardware and software requirements and that all prerequisite software has been installed. For more information about hardware and software requirements, see *SmartPlant 3D Database Server Recommendations* (on page 21). For more information about the prerequisite software, see *Loading Prerequisite Software on the Database Server* (on page 43).

If you have an older version of SmartPlant 3D software installed on your computer, uninstall it before loading the new software. Refer to the section entitled *Remove Smart 3D Software* (on page 182).

Approximately 1.15 GB of hard disk space is required to load the Smart 3D Reference Data software. Prior to installing Smart 3D Reference Data, select and size the hard disk partitions accordingly. For additional information, see *Disk Partitioning Guidelines* (on page 27).

- 1. Insert the **Intergraph Smart 3D Product** DVD. If the installation does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.
- 2. Select Reference Data Installation.
- 3. Click Next on the Welcome to the Smart 3D Reference Data Installation Wizard page.
- 4. On the **User Information** page, enter text in the **Full Name** and **Organization** fields, and then click **Next**.
- 5. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list and click **Display** to view the license agreement.

🔡 Installation for Smart 3D Ref	ference Data
	Software License Agreement Select the appropriate country, and then click Display to read the software license agreement that applies to you. Note: Adobe Reader must be installed to view and accept the software license agreement.
	Display
	agreement? If you choose No, setup will close. To install Smart 3D Reference Data, you must accept this agreement.

IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have Acrobat Reader installed on the server computer in order to view the license agreement. You can install Adobe Reader from the Adobe web site, www.adobe.com.

- 6. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document, and click **Yes** on the **License Agreement** page to accept the terms.
- Select if you want to install SmartPlant Reference Data or SmartMarine Reference Data.
 If you are installing SmartMarine, you only need to select the SmartMarine Reference Data option. This option includes those parts of the SmartPlant Reference Data that are required to run SmartMarine.
- 8. Click **Browse** and select a folder location for the software, and click **Next**. *The Ready to Install the Application page appears.*
- 9. Review the installation settings, and if they are what you want, click **Next**. *The selected reference data is installed to the destination folder.*
- 10. When the installation is complete, click **Finish** to exit the Smart 3D Reference Data installation sequence.

IMPORTANT You must share the SharedContent folder after installation is complete. For more information, see *Configure Network Shares* (on page 67).

11. Restart the computer to complete the installation.

Configure Network Shares

Before using SmartPlant 3D, you must configure the following network shares. The paths to these shares are needed while working in the software.

Database Templates Share

IMPORTANT Creating a share for the database templates that are delivered during the Smart 3D Reference Data setup is necessary only if you are planning to use Oracle databases.

Create a share on a computer to hold the database templates that you create for use with the software. By default, the database templates are delivered as part of the Smart 3D Reference Data setup.

The user login used to create the SmartPlant 3D databases and the account on which the Oracle service (OracleService<*SID*>) is running require Write permissions to this share.

NOTE For Oracle, the *userid* under which the Oracle service runs must have Write permission on both the share and the folder where the database templates are located. If the Oracle service is running as the local SYSTEM account, you should add the NT AUTHORITY/SYSTEM account to both.

SharedContent Share

Create a share for the SharedContent folder that is created during the Smart 3D Reference Data setup. All users must be granted read permissions on the share; those users responsible for creating output and reference data must have write access. You will need to specify this location name when you use the **Database Wizard** to create the Site and Catalog databases.

Additionally, if you installed Smart 3D Reference Data in the default folder (C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3DRefData\), you must adjust access permissions as follows:

- Access the **Properties** page for the SharedContent folder and modify the share permissions on the **Sharing** tab. At a minimum, permissions must allow read access for all users, and write access to those users responsible for creating output.
- Access the Properties page for the SharedContent folder and modify the share permissions on the Security tab to give users full control disk access for the SharedContent folder and subfolders.

Permissions for .NET Assemblies

Sign Assemblies

Intergraph Process, Power & Marine signs all delivered .NET assemblies with a strong name. Signing an assembly is a way to guarantee the authenticity of an assembly. If you create your own custom .NET assemblies, we recommend that you sign them with your company's private key. Refer to Visual Studio help for information on signing an assembly.

Granting Trust to Client Computers

You must set each computer that uses the signed assemblies trust access to the assemblies. The easiest way to do this is to distribute the permissions to each client computer using an .msi file. You will need the .NET Framework 2.0 Configuration utility, which is available in the .NET Software Development Kit. You can also search the Microsoft web site for "configwizard.msi download".

- 1. Install the .NET Framework 2.0 Configuration utility on a client computer.
- 2. Select Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Administrative Tools > Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 Configuration.
- 3. In the Console Root tree, expand .NET Framework 2.0 Configuration > My Computer > Runtime Security Policy > Machine > Code Groups > All Code > LocalIntranet Zone.
- 4. Under Tasks, click Add a Child Code Group.
- 5. Select Create a new code group.
- 6. In the Name box, type Delivered Smart 3D Content
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. In the Choose the condition type for this code group, select Strong Name.
- 9. Click Import.
- 10. Browse to and select one of the signed assemblies.

IMPORTANT You need to select one of the Intergraph Process, Power & Marine signed assemblies from the shared content folder. All Intergraph Process, Power & Marine assemblies are signed with the same key, so it does not matter which assembly you select. The public key displays.

- 11. Clear the Name check box.
- 12. Clear the Version check box.

TIP By clearing the **Name** and **Version** check boxes, the computer trusts all assemblies that were signed with the same strong name key.

- 13. Click Next.
- 14. Select FullTrust from Use existing permission set.
- 15. Click Next.
- 16. Click Finish.
- 17. Right-click Runtime Security Policy, and then select Create Deployment Package.
- 18. Select Machine.
- 19. Specify the file name and folder location for the .msi file.
- 20. Click Next.
- 21. Click Finish.
- 22. Distribute the .msi file to each client.

IMPORTANT After you do this procedure for the Intergraph Process, Power & Marine assemblies, you need to repeat the steps for the custom assemblies that you have created and signed.

Command Line Alternative

Instead of creating and distributing msi files, you can run a command line executable to grant the client computer access to the assemblies on the shared content share. You must run the following executable as an administrator from a command-line window on each client computer:

"C:\WINDOWS\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v2.0.50727\caspol.exe" -pp off -machine -addgroup LocalIntranet_Zone -url \\server\share* FullTrust -name "SharedContent Share"

where \\server\share is the computer name and share name for the SharedContent share.

IMPORTANT You must rerun this command line each time a .NET assembly is added to the share.

See Also

Install the Name Generator Service (on page 72) Install Smart 3D Reference Data (on page 66)

Move Custom DLLs to SharedContent Folder

Custom DLLs are any DLLs that are not originally delivered with SmartPlant 3D or delivered DLLs that have been modified by you to suit a specific purpose. Starting with Version 2009 (8.0) of SmartPlant 3D, custom DLLs should be saved in the SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder on your SharedContent share. Use the following workflow to copy your customized DLLs to this single location instead of registering each DLL on all client computers.

- 1. Recompile each Visual Basic project in a Version 2011 R1 (9.1) client installation.
- 2. Copy the new DLLs to the [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder.
 - You can create hierarchy folders as needed under the Custom Symbols folder.
 - If a custom DLL has a localizer DLL, both files should be located in the same folder.
 - DLLs ending "–Ref.dll" or "_Ref.dll" are treated as reference DLLs and are ignored. These DLLs do not need to be copied from the client machine containing the rules Visual Basic source code.
- 3. In the Project Management task, select a catalog that uses the SharedContent folder where your custom DLLs are located.
- 4. Select **Tools > Update Custom Symbol Configuration** or right-click the catalog node, and select **Update Custom Symbol Configuration**.

The command creates or updates the file called CustomSymbolConfig.xml in the [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent\Xml folder. CustomSymbolConfig.xml contains entries with the ProgID, CLSID, and DLL name for each class in the custom DLLs. After CustomSymbolConfig.xml is created, the software uses the custom DLLs from the [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder without the need of registering the DLL on the local computer.

IMPORTANT

 The software searches [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent]\Xml\CustomSymbolConfig.xml first and then

SystemSymbolConfig.xml. If there are duplicate entries in CustomSymbolConfig.xml and SymbolSymbolConfigSymbolSymbolConfig.xml for the same ProgID, an error or warning is written to the error log that appears when the **Update Custom Symbol Configuration** command finishes processing, and the DLL is not added to either XML file (CustomSymbolConfig.xml and SystemSymbolConfig.xml). Please clear any errors or warnings that appear in the error log after running this command to prevent such a scenario.

- Whenever a symbol or naming rule class is accessed, the software searches for the DLL as follows:
 - a. It checks if an entry for the ProgID exists in the xml files. If an entry exists, then the corresponding DLL is loaded and an instance of the class is created.
 - b. If an entry does not exist, it searches previously registered DLLs on the local computer.
 - c. If any entry is not found for the ProgID in either XML file and the DLL is also not registered on the local machine, the software returns an error. In this case, you should copy the DLL to the [*Reference Data Folder*]\SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder, and run the **Update Custom Symbol Configuration** command in Project Management.

If an entry exists for a ProgID in the xml files, it is used even though another (or same) copy of the DLL is registered on the local machine. The order of priority when creating an instance of an object is: CustomSymbolConfig.xml, SystemSymbolConfig.xml, and then the registry.

- When a new custom DLL is added to the [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder or an existing custom DLL is modified, you must re-run the Tools > Update Custom Symbol Configuration command in Project Management.
- If you choose to use option 1, then the custom DLLs in the [Reference Data Folder]\SharedContent\Custom Symbols folder should not be registered on the local computer.
- If any of these components use helper classes and the helper classes are instantiated by calling "CreateObject", the "CreateObject" needs to be replaced. If the helper class is in the same project, then "new" can be used instead of "CreateObject". If the helper class is in a different project, then "SP3DCreateObject" needs to be used instead of "CreateObject". SP3DCreateObject tries to instantiate the object using the information in xml files. If no entry is found in xml files for the given ProgID, then it calls "CreateObject". SP3DCreateObject is implemented in [Product Folder]\Core\Runtime\SP3DCoCreateInstance.dll. When SP3DCreateObject needs to be used, [Product

Folder]\Core\Runtime\SP3DCoCreateInstance.dll needs to be referenced in the Visual Basic project. Example usage of SP3DCreateObject is shown below:

Set oHelperObject = SP3DCreateObject(strHelperProgId)

 If the symbol class has any public structures or types, they should be made private. For example:

```
Public Type InputType
Name As String
Description As String
Properties As IMSDescriptionProperties
uomValue As Double
End Type
```

Should be changed to:

```
Private Type InputType
```

```
Name As String
Description As String
Properties As IMSDescriptionProperties
uomValue As Double
```

End Type

 Debugging and maintaining Visual Basic project references, reference DLLs, and binary compatibility are beyond the scope of this document. Contact your SmartPlant 3D Support representative if you have questions.

Installing the Name Generator Service

The Name Generator Service supplies unique names to items placed in the model database. Although we recommend installing the Name Generator Service on the same computer as the reference data software, you can install the Name Generator Service on any computer running on the Windows domain.

Hardware Requirements

For optimal performance, the following minimum hardware requirements are recommended:

- 2.8 GHz Pentium[®] 4 processor or higher
- Minimum of 1 GB memory
- 100 BaseT or higher network interface
- Minimum of 5 MB hard drive disk space on the drive where Name Generator Service is installed

Prerequisite Software

For optimal performance, the following minimum software requirements are recommended:

- For large installations: Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2
- or
- For small installations: Windows XP Service Pack 3 32-bit (maximum 10 connections), Windows XP Service Pack 2 64-bit (maximum 10 connections), or Windows 7 32-bit or 64-bit (maximum 20 connections)
- Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 SP1
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- 32-bit or 64-bit Oracle Client

IMPORTANT

- If you are installing the Name Generator Service on a Windows Server 2008 platform, you
 must manually enable MSDTC network access. For more information, see Enable Network
 Access in Windows Server 2008 (on page 39).
- If you are installing the Name Generator Service on a server computer on which Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 is installed, you must create a SQL Server Login that has a system administrator role in SQL Servers. For information about creating a SQL Server Login and assigning administrator privileges, see *Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service* (on page 47).
- If you are installing the Name Generator Service on a system running the Windows XP operating system, you must ensure that Launch and Access permissions are granted in COM Security in Windows XP Component Services dialog box for the Windows XP Workstation to be used as name generator. This is analogous to the Distributed COM users group in Windows 2008 Server.
- If you are installing the Name Generator Service on an Oracle 32-bit Client computer, the computer must be configured to access the Oracle database server through Net Manager.
- You must install the 32-bit Name Generator if you are using a 32-bit Oracle client.
- Installing the 32-bit Name Generator with 32-bit Oracle Client on a 64-bit Oracle server causes slower database performance.
- You can install the 32-bit Name generator on 32-bit or 64-bit workstations with 32-bit Oracle client loaded.

- The Name Generator Service works when installed with the 64-bit Oracle Client on a 64-bit database servers. We recommend that if you are running Oracle 64-bit on a 64-bit server with 64-bit client loaded, install the 64-bit Name Generator.
- After installing the Name Generator Service, the firewall on that computer must be configured to allow DCOM Dynamic Ports. For more information, see *Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 2008 Server* (on page 79).

See Also

Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008 (on page 39) Configure the Name Generator Service (on page 74) Install the Name Generator Service (on page 72) Install Smart 3D Reference Data (on page 66)

Install the Name Generator Service

Prior to installing the Name Generator Service on the computer, verify that all the prerequisites have been met. For more information, see *Installing the Name Generator Service* (on page 71).

- 1. You must login to the computer with an account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Insert the **Intergraph Smart 3D** DVD. If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the CD.
- 3. Select Name Generator Installation.
- 4. Click Next on the Welcome to the Intergraph Smart 3D Name Generator Installation Wizard.
- 5. On the **User Information** page, enter text in the **Full Name** and **Organization** fields, and then click **Next**.
- 6. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list and click **Display** to view the license agreement.


IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have a PDF Reader installed on the computer in order to view the license agreement. If the software detects that a PDF Reader is not installed, an informational message box appears.

- 7. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document, and click **Yes** on the **License Agreement** page to accept the terms.
- 8. Select the 32-bit or 64-bit version of Name Generator to install, and click **Next**. This option is available only on 64-bit computers.

搅 Intergraph Smart 3D Name Generator Setup		- • 💌
Computer Architecture Choose the computer architecture version of the file	you want to install.	Ó
32-bit version of Name Generator		
64-bit version of Name Generator		
Wise Installation Wizard®	< Back Next >	Cancel

- 9. Change the installation destination folder, if needed, and then click **Next**.
- 10. On the **Server Access** page, enter the user account under which the Name Generator Service will run in the **Username** box.

CAUTION

- You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the server.
- If you are configuring the Name Generator Service on a server computer on which Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 is installed, the user account must also be a SQL Server Login that has a system administrator role in SQL Servers; otherwise, the Name Generator Service will not run. For information about creating a SQL Server Login and assigning administrator privileges, see *Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service* (on page 47).
- 11. In the **Password** and **Confirm Password** fields, enter the password of the user, and then click **Next**.
- 12. Click **Next** on the **Ready to Install the Application** page to begin installing the Name Generator Service.

A progress bar appears showing the progress of the installation.

13. When the installation is complete, click Finish.

CAUTION If a "Name Generation service configuration failed. Failed to update password in the SP3DNameGenerator" error message appears, you must configure the

name generation service manually. For more information, see *Configure the Name Generator Service* (on page 74).

SmartPla	nt 3D Reference Data Installation 📃 🔀
⚠	Name Generation server configuration failed. Do you want to view the installation guide now?
	OK Cancel

14. Restart the computer to complete the installation.

See Also

Installing the Name Generator Service (on page 71)

Configure the Name Generator Service

Perform the following steps to verify and, if necessary, manually configure the SmartPlant 3D Name Generator Service on a computer. This procedure is only necessary if you received the following error message during installation of the Name Generator Service:

SmartPla	nt 3D Reference Data Installation 📃 🔀
⚠	Name Generation server configuration failed. Do you want to view the installation guide now?
	OK

- 1. Log on with an account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Open the Control Panel, double-click **Administrative Tools**, and then double-click **Component Services** to start the component services MMC snap-in.

The **Component Services** window appears as shown in the following illustration:

🚡 Component Services	
] 🚡 <u>C</u> onsole <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> e	الم
] <u>A</u> ction ⊻iew] ← →	È I X 🗗 Ø 2 1
Tree	Component Services
Console Root	
 Event Viewer (Local) Services (Local) 	Computers
I]	

3. Expand the **Component Services** node under the **Console Root**, and then expand the **Computers** and **My Computer** nodes.



- 4. Expand the **COM+ Applications** node.
- 5. Verify the **SP3DNameGenerator** icon appears under COM+ Applications. If it exists, skip to step 14. If it does not exist, perform steps 6-13.



- 6. Select **COM+ Applications** under the **My Computer** node, and then click **Action>New>Application** on the horizontal toolbar.
- 7. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Application Install Wizard page.
- 8. Select Create an empty application on the Install or Create a New Application page.
- 9. On the **Create an Empty Application** page, type **SP3DNameGenerator** in the **Enter a name for the new application** text box.
- 10. Select Server application as the Activation type, and then click Next.
- On the Set Application Identity page, enter the user name and password to set the proper identity under which the COM+ application will run on the computer, and then click Next.
 IMPORTANT
 - You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the computer.
 - If you are configuring the Name Generator Service on a computer on which Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 is installed, the user account must also be a SQL Server Login that has a system administrator role in SQL Servers; otherwise, the Name Generator Service will not run. For information about creating a SQL Server Login and assigning administrator privileges, see *Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service* (on page 47).
- 12. Click **Finish** to begin the installation.

NOTE When the installation is complete, a **SP3DNameGenerator** node is placed under **COM+ Applications**.

🚡 Component Services	
] 🚡 <u>C</u> onsole <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	_ B ×
$Action View 4 \Leftrightarrow A E R \times P$	😰 🎦 🗷 🏊 🗄 🏛 🛱
Tree	SP3DNameGenerator 2 object(s)
Console Root Component Services Computers My Computer COM+ Applications COM+ QC Dead Letter Queue Lisl COM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities System Application COM+ Utilities COM+ OCM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities COM+ OCM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities COM+ OCM+ Utilities COM+ OCM+ Utilities COM+ OCM+ OCM+ OCM COM+ OCM COM COM+ OCM COM+ OCM COM COM+ OCM COM COM COM COM COM COM COM	Components Roles

- 13. Next, expand the SP3DNameGenerator node.
- 14. Expand the **Components** node. Verify the **NTNameService.UpdateNumber.1** component appears. If it exists, skip to step 20. If it does not exist, perform steps 15-19.
- 15. On the horizontal toolbar, click **Action > New > Component**. The **COM Component Installation Wizard** appears.
- 16. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Component Install Wizard.
- 17. Select Install new component(s) and browse for NTNameService.dll.

TIP The 32-bit component .DLL is located in [*Product Folder*]\CommonApp\Server\Bin. The 64-bit component .DLL is located in [*Product Folder*]\CommonApp\Server\Bin64.

18. Click **Next** on the **Install new components** page, and then click **Finish** to complete the installation procedure.

NOTE The **Component Services** window indicates that the

NTNameService.UpdateNumber.1 component is installed in the SP3DNameGenerator Application.

🚡 Component Services
Console Window Help
$ \underline{A}_{ction} \underline{\forall}_{iew} \underline{ } \Leftrightarrow \rightarrow \underbrace{\textcircled{1}}_{loc} \times \textcircled{2} \underline{\textcircled{2}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{1} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{1} \underline{1}} \underline{\underline{1}} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1}} \underline{1} \underline{1}} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} \underline{1} $
Tree GetNewNumber
Console Root Component Services Computers COM+ Applications COM+ QC Dead Letter Queue Listener COM+ Utilities SP3DNameGenerator COM+ Utilities SP3DNameGenerator Components NTNameService.UpdateNumber.1 Components NTNameService.UpdateNumber.1 Components Comp

- 19. Select the **SP3DNameGenerator** application icon.
- 20. Click Action > Properties, and then click on the Identity tab.
- 21. Select the **This user:** option.

22. Enter the user and password to set the proper identity under which the COM+ application will run on the computer.

Advanced Dump Pooling & Recycling General Security Identity Activation Queuing This application will run under the following account. Account System Account: Interactive user - The current logged on user Local Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access Local System - Complete access to local machine This user: User: ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. ØK Cancel Apply OK Cancel Apply OK Cancel Apply OK Cancel Apply	iP3DNameGen	erator Pro	perties		? ×
General Security Identity Activation Queuing This application will run under the following account. Account Account Account Interactive user - The current logged on user O Interactive user - The current logged on user Interactive user - Built-in service account. Interactive e - Built-in service account. Placeal Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access O Local System - Complete access to local machine Inservice Inis user: Ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: Confirm password: Ingrnet\rlipe Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. OK Cancel	Advance	ed	Dump	Pooling & I	Recycling
This application will run under the following account. Account Interactive user - The current logged on user Local Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access Local System - Complete access to local machine Inis user: User: ingrnet\rlige Browse Password: Confirm password: Server applications cannot run under system service accounts.	General	Security	Identity	Activation	Queuing
Account System Account: Interactive user - The current logged on user Local Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access Local System - Complete access to local machine Inis user: Liser: ingmet\rlipe Bassword: e	This applicati	on will run ur	nder the following ac	count.	
System Account. Interactive user - The current logged on user Local Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access Local System - Complete access to local machine Ihis user: Liser: Ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: Onfirm password: Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. OK Cancel Apply	Account	Account			
 Interactive user - The current logged on user Local Service - Built-in service account. Network Service - Built-in service account with network access Local System - Complete access to local machine Inis user: Local System - Complete access to local machine Inis user: Liser: ingrnet\rlipe Browse Browse Confirm password: ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	<u>o</u> ystem	Account.	T 1 11	,	
C Local Service - Builtin service account. Network Service - Builtin service account with network access C Local System - Complete access to local machine Image: Liser: Liser: Liser: Ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: Image: Liser: Image: Liser: Image: Liser: Image: Image: Liser:	⊂ <u>I</u> nte	eractive user	 The current logge 	d on user	
Network Service - Built-in service account with network access C Local System - Complete access to local machine Inis user: User: ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: Confirm password: Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. OK Cancel	C Loc	cal Service -	Built-in service acco	ount.	
C Local System - Complete access to local machine Ihis user: Ingrnet\rlipe Browse <u>U</u> ser: ingrnet\rlipe <u>P</u> assword: <u>C</u> onfirm password: <u>C</u> onfirm password: <u>Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. <u>OK</u> </u>	C Ne	twork Servic cess	e - Built-in service a	ccount with net	work
Image: Initial set: Initiation set: Initial set: Initial set: Initial set: Initial set: Ini	C Los	cal System - I	Complete access to	local machine	
User: ingrnet\rlipe Browse Password: ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	• <u>T</u> his us	er:			
Password: ••••••••• Confirm password: •••••••• Image: Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. Image: OK Cancel	<u>U</u> ser:		ingrnet\rljoe		Browse
Confirm password: ••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	Passwor	ı.	-		
<u>Confirm password:</u> <u>Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. OK Cancel Apply </u>		.			
Server applications cannot run under system service accounts.	<u>C</u> onfirm p	bassword:	•••••	•••	
Server applications cannot run under system service accounts. OK Cancel					
OK Cancel Apply	i) Serve	er application	is cannot run under	system service	accounts.
OK Cancel Apply	~				
OK Cancel Apply					
			ОК	Cancel	Apply

IMPORTANT

- You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the computer.
- If you are configuring the Name Generator Service on a computer on which Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 is installed, the user account must also be a SQL Server Login that has a system administrator role in SQL Servers; otherwise, the Name Generator Service will not run. For information about creating a SQL Server Login and assigning administrator privileges, see *Configure SQL Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service* (on page 47).
- 23. Click Apply.
- 24. Select the Security tab.
- 25. Under **Authorization**, clear the **Enforce access checks for this application** option if selected. This option is selected by default in Windows 2003 Server, but must be turned off.
- 26. Click **OK** to complete the configuration procedure.

See Also

Installing the Name Generator Service (on page 71)

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 2008 Server

The following procedure presumes that you are using the firewall delivered by Microsoft with Windows 2008 Server. If you are using third-party firewall software, please consult that product's documentation.

You must configure the firewall on the Windows 2008 R2 Server computer as described below for the Name Generator to run:

- All RPC Dynamic Ports in the firewall must be open in order for the Name Generator to communicate with the client computers.
- The Name Generator must be able to communicate with the SQL Server default instance running over TCP and the SQL Server Browser service.

IMPORTANT The firewall can reset itself to its default settings. If you encounter an error, review your Windows Firewall settings and verify that they are as outlined in this procedure.

Windows Firewall Instructions for RPC Dynamic Ports

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
- 2. In the left panel section, select Advanced settings.
- 3. In the left panel section, select Inbound Rules.
- 4. In the right panel section under **Actions**, click **New Rule**.
- 5. Select **Port**, and then click **Next**.
- 6. Select **TCP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 7. Type 135 in the **Specific local ports** box.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 10. Verify that Domain, Private, and Public are selected, and then click Next.
- 11. In the Name box, type RPC.
- 12. In the **Description** box, type Smart 3D Name Generator RPC.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. Right-click the new RPC rule in the list, and then select Properties.
- 15. Select the Protocols and Ports tab.
- 16. In the Local port option, select RPC Dynamic Ports.
- 17. Click OK.
- 18. Restart your computer so that the changes can take effect.

Windows Firewall Instructions for Microsoft SQL Server 2008

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
- 2. In the left panel section, select Advanced settings.
- 3. In the left panel section, select **Inbound Rules**.
- 4. In the right panel section under Actions, click New Rule.
- 5. Select **Port**, and then click **Next**.
- 6. Select **TCP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 7. Type 1433 in the **Specific local ports** box.

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 10. Verify that **Domain**, **Private**, and **Public** are selected, and then click **Next**.
- 11. In the Name box, type SQL 2008 Instance.
- 12. In the **Description** box, type Smart 3D Name Generator SQL 2008 Instance.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. In the right panel section under Actions, click New Rule.
- 15. Select Port, and then click Next.
- 16. Select **UDP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 17. Type 1434 in the **Specific local ports** box.
- 18. Click Next.
- 19. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 20. Verify that Domain, Private, and Public are selected, and then click Next.
- 21. In the Name box, type SQL 2008 Browser.
- 22. In the Description box, type Smart 3D Name Generator SQL 2008 Browser.
- 23. Click Finish.

SECTION 7 Setting Up the Client

You can use the SmartPlant 3D client software for general modeling, as well as for performing a variety of administrative activities, including managing permissions, backing up and restoring data, creating plants, and monitoring database interference detection. Additionally, the software provides features that extend the capabilities of the software to include importing model data and integrating SmartPlant 3D with SmartPlant P&ID.

The following table summarizes all the features that are available in the SmartPlant 3D installation, as well as any dependencies that exist between one feature and another. By default, all the features that are required for modeling are included in a typical setup:

Task or Feature Name	Default	Feature Description
Project Management	No	Installs the Project Management task for creating plants, managing access control, and upgrading databases. Also requires the SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity component.
3D Model Import	No	Installs the required components for importing model data into SmartPlant 3D. These commands are on the File > Import menu in all SmartPlant 3D tasks.
Piping Specification Remote Access Server	No	Installs the necessary software for correlating piping specification data between SmartPlant 3D and SmartPlant P&ID.
SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity	No	Installs required connectivity components for the Bulkload Utility, as well as plant creation and upgrade functionality in the Project Management task.
Bulkload Reference Data	No	Installs the Bulkload Utility for adding, modifying and deleting reference data from the Catalog database. Requires The SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity component.
Database Interference Detection Service	No	Installs the software required for database interference detection. You must configure this service through Windows Services. Requires the Project Management component.

If you install the optional **Project Management** task, Microsoft SQL Server 2008 32-bit client must be installed on the same computer. These SQL Server components are not required on client computers where **Project Management** is not installed.

The **Piping Specification Remote Access Server** feature sets up the workstation computer as a remote access server. Selecting the **Piping Specification Remote Access Server** feature registers the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer COM+ component. No additional files are copied to the administrator computer. For more information about the P&ID integration capabilities of the software, see *Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID* (on page 119) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

CAUTION

- SmartPlant 3D has not been fully certified for compatibility with any other Intergraph products installed and in concurrent use on the same computer, except those required to support PDS functionality.
- If you have a previous version of SmartPlant 3D installed, you need to remove it before installing the new version. For more information, see *Application Maintenance* (on page 179) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3

When you install Microsoft XP Service Pack 3, all network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) transactions are disabled, even if network transactions were previously enabled prior to installing the service pack. Consequently, you must manually configure MSDTC and re-enable your distributed scenarios.

Additionally, Microsoft XP Service Pack 3 enables a firewall by default. SmartPlant 3D uses the Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) service, which in turn uses Microsoft Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM)/Remote Procedure Call (RPC) technology. As a result, you must manually configure the Windows firewall to allow the DTC service and confine incoming external communication to port 135 (the RPC Endpoint Mapper port).

See Also

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only) (on page 84) Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP (on page 85)

SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments

SmartPlant 3D uses the following port assignments:

NOTE On Windows 7 and Windows XP systems, to avoid opening each TCP port address from 1024 through 65536 for Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) communications, you can allow MSDTC to work through the system's firewall. For more information on allowing MSDTC to work through a firewall, refer to one of the following links, depending on your system:

- Windows XP: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/250367
- Windows 7 (for a generic procedure on allowing a program through the firewall): http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows7/Allow-a-program-to-communicate-through-Windows-Firewall

Port Number	TCP/UDP	Communication	Comments
135	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D System
1024 through 65536	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D (for MSDTC), see note above about an alternate configuration.

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (XP Client Only)

The following procedure is only necessary if you are using Microsoft XP Professional with Service Pack 3.

When you install Microsoft XP Service Pack 3, all network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) transactions are disabled, even if network transactions were previously enabled prior to installing the service pack. Use the following procedure to manually configure MSDTC and re-enable your distributed scenarios.

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel and double-click Administrative Tools.
- 2. Double-click Component Services.
- 3. Under Console Root, expand the Component Services and Computers nodes.
- 4. Under the Computers node, right-click on My Computer and select Properties.
- 5. On the **MSDTC** tab, click **Security Configuration**. *The Security Configuration dialog box displays.*
- 6. In the Security Settings section, enable Network DTC Access.
- 7. In the Transaction Manager Communication section, enable the Allow Outbound, Allow Inbound, and No Authentication Required options.
- 8. Enable the Enable XA Transactions option.
- 9. In the **DTC Logon Account** section, verify that **NT AUTHORITY/Network Service** appears in the **Account** box.
- 10. Click **OK**.

See Also

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (on page 39) Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 (on page 83)

Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP

- 1. Open the Control Panel and double-click Administrative Tools.
- 2. Double-click Services.

TIP You can also right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**. In the **Computer Management** window, expand the **Services and Applications** node, and click **Services**.

3. Locate **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** in the list of services, and verify that the **Status** is set to **Started** and **Startup Type** is set to **Automatic**.

No. Services						×
] <u>A</u> ction ⊻iew] ← →	- 🖿 🖬 🗗 🛃 😫] > I					
Tree	Name 🛆	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
Services (Local)	Alerter 🖏	Notifies selecte		Manual	LocalSystem	
allo , , ,	Application Management	Provides softw		Manual	LocalSystem	
	🖏 ClipBook	Supports ClipB		Manual	LocalSystem	
	COM+ Event System	Provides autom	Started	Manual	LocalSystem	
	Computer Browser	Maintains an u	Started	Automatic	LocalSystem	
	Sector Client	Manages netw	Started	Automatic	LocalSystem	
	Sistributed Link Tracking Client	Sends notificati	Started	Automatic	LocalSystem	
	Sistributed Transaction Coordinator	Coordinates tr	Started	Automatic	LocalSystem	
	S Client	Resolves and c	Started	Automatic	LocalSystem	

4. If the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service is not started, follow the steps below to start the service.

Start MSDTC

- 1. Open the **Control Panel** and double-click **Administrative Tools**.
- 2. Double-click **Services**.
- 3. To change the **Status** or **Startup Type**, right-click on the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 4. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
- 5. In the Service status section, click Start.
- 6. Click OK.

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in XP

The following procedure presumes that you are using the firewall delivered by Microsoft with Windows XP SP3. If you are using third-party firewall software, please consult that product's documentation.

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > Security Center, and select Windows Firewall.
- 2. On the Exceptions tab in the Windows Firewall dialog box, click Add Program.
- 3. In the Add a Program dialog box, click Browse.
- 4. In the **Browse** dialog box, type **%SYSTEMROOT%\SYSTEM32\MSDTC.exe** in the **File name** box and click **Open**.
- 5. In the **Add a Program** dialog box, click **Change Scope** and define the scope per your network configurations.
- 6. Click **OK**, and then click **OK** in the **Add a Program** dialog box.

7. On the Exceptions tab, verify that MSDTC.exe has been added to the Programs and Services list.

😺 Windows Firewall	
General Exceptions Advanced	
Windows Firewall is blocking incoming netwo programs and services selected below. Addin to work better but might increase your securit Programs and Services:	rk connections, except for the ig exceptions allows some programs y risk.
Name	Group Policy
File and Printer Sharing	No
M msdtc.exe	No
Remote Assistance	No
Remote Desktop	No
UPnP Framework	No
Add P <u>r</u> ogram Add P <u>o</u> rt	<u>E</u> dit <u>D</u> elete
What are the risks of allowing exceptions?	
	OK Cancel

TIP Make sure that the **File and Printer Sharing** option is checked. This is necessary for Project Management, connection to the site database for the first time, and submission of NT Batch jobs to other workstations to work properly.

- 8. On the Exceptions tab, click Add Port.
- 9. In the Add a Port dialog box, type RPC in the Name box and 135 in the Port number box.

TIP Leave the protocol set to the default, **TCP**.

Add a Port	
Use these settings number and protoc want to use.	to open a port through Windows Firewall. To find the port ol, consult the documentation for the program or service you
<u>N</u> ame:	RPC
<u>P</u> ort number:	135
What are the risks	of opening a port?
Change scope	OK Cancel

- 10. Click **Change scope** and define the scope per your network configurations.
- 11. Click **OK** to close the **Change scope** dialog box.
- 12. Click **OK** to close the **Add a Port** dialog box.

13. On the **Exceptions** tab, verify that **RPC** has been added to the **Programs and Services** list, and then click **OK** to close the **Windows Firewall** dialog box.

😺 Windows Firewall	
General Exceptions Advanced	
Windows Firewall is blocking incoming networ programs and services selected below. Adding to work better but might increase your security	k connections, except for the g exceptions allows some programs risk.
Programs and Services:	
Name	Group Policy
✓ File and Printer Sharing	No
🗹 msdtc	No
Remote Assistance	No
Remote Desktop	No
RPC .	No
UPnP Framework	No
Add Program Add Port	Edit Delete
Display a notification when Windows Firew	vall blocks a program
What are the risks of allowing exceptions?	
	OK Cancel

14. Restart your computer so that the changes can take effect.

IMPORTANT The firewall can reset itself to its default settings. If you encounter the error **"Cannot enlist SQL PDS with MSDTC**", review your Windows Firewall settings and verify that they are as outlined in this procedure.

See Also

Instructions for Windows XP with Service Pack 3 (on page 83)

Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2

When you install Microsoft Windows Vista Service Pack 2, all network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator transactions are disabled, even if the network transactions were previously enabled prior to installing the service pack. Consequently, you must manually configure MSDTC and re-enable your distributed scenarios.

Additionally, Microsoft Vista Service Pack 2 enables a firewall by default. SmartPlant 3D uses the Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) service, which in turn uses Microsoft Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM)/Remote Procedure Call (RPC) technology. As a result, you must manually configure the Windows firewall to allow the DTC service and confine incoming external communication to port 135 (the RPC Endpoint Mapper port).

See Also

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) (on page 90)

Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 (on page 90)

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication (on page 91)

SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments

SmartPlant 3D uses the following port assignments:

NOTE On Windows 7 and Windows XP systems, to avoid opening each TCP port address from 1024 through 65536 for Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) communications, you can allow MSDTC to work through the system's firewall. For more information on allowing MSDTC to work through a firewall, refer to one of the following links, depending on your system:

- Windows XP: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/250367
- Windows 7 (for a generic procedure on allowing a program through the firewall): http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows7/Allow-a-program-to-communicate-through-Windows-Firewall

Port Number	TCP/UDP	Communication	Comments
135	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D System
1024 through 65536	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D (for MSDTC), see note above about an alternate configuration.

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)

The following procedure is only necessary if you are using Microsoft Windows Vista or Microsoft Windows 7. All network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) transactions are disabled. Use the following procedure to manually configure MSDTC and re-enable your distributed scenarios.

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.
- 2. Type dcomcnfg, and click OK.
- 3. Under Console Root, expand the Component Services, Computers, My Computer, and Distributed Transaction Coordinator nodes.
- 4. If you get a Windows Firewall alert regarding Microsoft Management Console features being blocked, select **Domain networks, such as a workplace network**, and then click **Allow access**.
- 5. Under the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** node, right-click on **Local DTC** and select **Properties**.
- 6. Select the **Security** tab.
- 7. In the Security Settings section, enable Network DTC Access.
- 8. In the **Client and Administration** section, enable **Allow Remote Clients** and **Allow Remote Administration** options.
- 9. In the **Transaction Manager Communication** section, enable the **Allow Inbound**, **Allow Outbound** and **No Authentication Required** options.
- 10. Enable the Enable XA Transactions option.
- 11. In the **DTC Logon Account** section, verify that **NT AUTHORITY/Network Service** appears in the **Account** box.
- 12. Click **OK**.
- 13. Click Yes if you are prompted to stop and restart the MSDTC service.

Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.
- 2. Type **dcomcnfg**, and click **OK**.
- 3. Double-click **Services**.

TIP You can also right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**. In the **Computer Management** window, expand the **Services and Applications** node, and click **Services**.

4. Locate **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** in the list of services, and verify that the **Status** is set to **Started** and **Startup Type** is set to **Automatic**.

Component Services							_ D <mark>_ X</mark>
le Action View Wind	low Help						_ 8 ×
♦ ♦ 2 🖬 🗎 4 ₽							
Console Root	O Services (Local)						Actions
Event Viewer (Local)	Distributed Transaction Coordinator	Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As 🔺	Services (Local)
Services (Local)	Stop the service Restart the service Description: Coordinates transactions that span multiple resource managers, such as databases, message queues, and file systems. If this service is topped, these transactions will not occur. If this service is disabled, any services that explicitly depend on it will fail to start.	Broadcom ASF IP and SMBIOS Mail Certificate Propagation CMS Key Isolation COM+ Event System COM+ Event System COM+ System Application COM+ System Application Computer Browser Cryptographic Services DCOM Server Process Launcher Dell Wireless WLAN Tray Service Dell Wireless WLAN Tray Service Destop Window Manager Session DFS Replication DFS Replication Disposite Policy Service Diagnostic Policy Service Diagnostic System Host Distributed Link Tracking Client Distributed Link Tracking Client Distributed Transaction Coordinator dab_device DDS Client Extensible Authentication Protocol Fax FLEXnet Licensing Service Function Discovery Presource Publi Google Updater Service	Vernightan Monitors an Propagates The CNG ke Supports Sy Provides fo Provides lau Improves b Provides lau Improves b Provides au Provides au Provides De Replicates fi Registers an The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Diagno The Disc fi The DNS Cli The Stensi Enables you This service Host proces Publishes th	Started Starte	Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Automatic Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Manual Automatic Automatic Manual Manual Automatic Automatic Manual Manual Automatic Automatic	Local Syste Local Syste Network S. Local Syste Network S. Local Syste Local Syste Network S. Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Network S. Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Network S. Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste	More Actions Distributed Transa More Actions
	Extended (Standard /	Obup Forey create		Junca	Automatic	> P	
							1

- 5. If the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service is not started, right-click on the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 6. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
- 7. In the Service status section, click Start.
- 8. Click OK.

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication

The following procedure presumes that you are using the firewall delivered by Microsoft with Windows Vista. If you are using third-party firewall software, please consult that product's documentation.

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > Security.
- 2. In the Security Center section, select Allow a program though Windows Firewall.
- 3. On the Exceptions tab in the Windows Firewall Settings dialog box, click Add Program.
- 4. In the Add a Program dialog box, click Browse.
- 5. In the **Browse** dialog box, type **%SYSTEMROOT%\SYSTEM32\MSDTC.exe** in the **File name** box and click **Open**.
- 6. In the **Add a Program** dialog box, click **Change Scope** and define the scope per your network configurations.
- 7. Click OK, and then click OK in the Add a Program dialog box.

8. On the **Exceptions** tab, verify that **MSDTC.exe** has been added to the **Programs and Services** list.

Windows Firewall Settings	×
General Exceptions Advanced	
Windows Firewall is turned off. Your computer is at risk of attacks and intru from outside sources such as the Internet. We recommend that you dick th General tab and select On. Windows Firewall is currently using settings for the public network location. What are the risks of unblocking a program?	sions ie
To enable an exception, select its check box:	
Program or port	
Distributed Transaction Coordinator	
✓ File and Printer Sharing	
✓ File and Printer Sharing	
	=
Key Management Service	
Microsoft Office Outlook	
Domata Dasktan	-
Add program Add port Properties Delete	
☑ Notify me when Windows Firewall blocks a new program	
OK Cancel Ap	oply

TIP Make sure that the **File and Printer Sharing** option is checked. This is necessary for Project Management, connection to the site database for the first time, and submission of NT Batch jobs to other workstations to work properly.

- 9. On the Exceptions tab, click Add Port.
- 10. In the Add a Port dialog box, type RPC in the Name box and 135 in the Port number box.

TIP Leave the protocol set to the default, **TCP**.

Add a Port						
Use these settings to open a port through Windows Firewall. To find the port number and protocol, consult the documentation for the program or service you want to use.						
Name:	RPC					
Port number:	135					
Protocol:	() TCP					
	© UDP					
What are the risks	of opening a port?					
Change scope	OK Cancel					

- 11. Click Change scope and define the scope per your network configurations.
- 12. Click **OK** to close the **Change scope** dialog box.
- 13. Click **OK** to close the **Add a Port** dialog box.

14. On the Exceptions tab, verify that RPC has been added to the Programs and Services list, and then click OK to close the Windows Firewall dialog box.

Windows Firewall Settings
General Exceptions Advanced
Windows Firewall is turned off. Your computer is at risk of attacks and intrusions from outside sources such as the Internet. We recommend that you click the General tab and select On.
Windows Firewall is currently using settings for the public network location. What are the risks of unblocking a program?
To enable an exception, select its check box:
Program or port
Remote Event Log Management Remote Scheduled Tasks Management Remote Service Management
Remote Volume Management
✓ Skype
SNMP Trap
Trend Micro OfficeScan Listener
✓ VMware Workstation
Windows Collaboration Computer Name Registration Service
Windows Firewall Remote Management
Add program Add port Properties Delete
☑ Notify me when Windows Firewall blocks a new program
OK Cancel Apply

15. Restart your computer so that the changes can take effect.

IMPORTANT The firewall can reset itself to its default settings. If you encounter the error **"Cannot enlist SQL PDS with MSDTC**", review your Windows Firewall settings and verify that they are as outlined in this procedure.

See Also

Instructions for Windows Vista with Service Pack 2 (on page 89)

Instructions for Windows 7

When you install Windows 7 Service Pack 1, all network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator transactions are disabled. You must manually configure MSDTC and enable your distributed scenarios.

Additionally, Windows 7 SP1 enables a firewall by default. SmartPlant 3D uses the Distributed Transaction Coordinator (DTC) service, which in turn uses Microsoft Distributed Component Object Model (DCOM)/Remote Procedure Call (RPC) technology. As a result, you must manually configure the Windows firewall to allow the DTC service.

See Also

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only) (on page 90)

Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7 (on page 90)

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 7 (on page 97)

SmartPlant 3D Port Assignments

SmartPlant 3D uses the following port assignments:

NOTE On Windows 7 and Windows XP systems, to avoid opening each TCP port address from 1024 through 65536 for Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) communications, you can allow MSDTC to work through the system's firewall. For more information on allowing MSDTC to work through a firewall, refer to one of the following links, depending on your system:

- Windows XP: http://support.microsoft.com/kb/250367
- Windows 7 (for a generic procedure on allowing a program through the firewall): http://windows.microsoft.com/en-US/windows7/Allow-a-program-to-communicate-through-Wi ndows-Firewall

Port Number	TCP/UDP	Communication	Comments
135	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D System
1024 through 65536	ТСР	From workstation to server; from server to workstation	For SmartPlant 3D (for MSDTC), see note above about an alternate configuration.

Configure Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (Vista or Windows 7 Client Only)

The following procedure is only necessary if you are using Microsoft Windows Vista or Microsoft Windows 7. All network Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) transactions are disabled. Use the following procedure to manually configure MSDTC and re-enable your distributed scenarios.

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.
- 2. Type dcomcnfg, and click OK.
- 3. Under Console Root, expand the Component Services, Computers, My Computer, and Distributed Transaction Coordinator nodes.
- 4. If you get a Windows Firewall alert regarding Microsoft Management Console features being blocked, select **Domain networks, such as a workplace network**, and then click **Allow access**.
- 5. Under the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** node, right-click on **Local DTC** and select **Properties**.
- 6. Select the **Security** tab.
- 7. In the Security Settings section, enable Network DTC Access.
- 8. In the **Client and Administration** section, enable **Allow Remote Clients** and **Allow Remote Administration** options.
- 9. In the Transaction Manager Communication section, enable the Allow Inbound, Allow Outbound and No Authentication Required options.
- 10. Enable the Enable XA Transactions option.
- 11. In the **DTC Logon Account** section, verify that **NT AUTHORITY/Network Service** appears in the **Account** box.
- 12. Click **OK**.
- 13. Click **Yes** if you are prompted to stop and restart the MSDTC service.

Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in Vista and Windows 7

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.
- 2. Type **dcomcnfg**, and click **OK**.
- 3. Double-click Services.

TIP You can also right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**. In the **Computer Management** window, expand the **Services and Applications** node, and click **Services**.

4. Locate **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** in the list of services, and verify that the **Status** is set to **Started** and **Startup Type** is set to **Automatic**.

Component Services						
🖲 File Action View Window Help						
🗢 🔿 🖄 🖬 🖬 🙆						
Console Root	Services (Local)					Actions
Event Viewer (Local)	Distributed Transaction Coordinator	Name	Description Sta	tatus Startup Type	Log On As 🔺	Services (Local)
Services (Local)	Distributed fransaction coordinator Stop the service Restart the service Description: Coordinates transactions that span multiple resource managers, such as databases, message queues, and file systems. If this service is stopped, these transactions will not occur. If this service is diabled, any services that explicitly depend on it will fail to start.	Name Generation ASF IP and SMBIOS Mail Gentificate Propagation COM + Sylabition COM + Sylabition COM + Sylam Application Computer Browser Cryptographic Services DCOM Server Process Launcher Dell Internal Network Card Power Dell Wireless WLAN Tray Service Destrop Window Manager Session DFS Replication DFS Replication DFS Replication DFS Replication DFS Replication Disgnostic Service Host Disgnostic System Host Distributed Link Tracking Client Distributed Transaction Coordinator Galab.device DISN Client Extensible Authentication Protocol Fax ELEVANE Licensing Service	Description as Monitors an Sta Monitors an Sta Supports Sy Sta Manages th Sta Manages th Sta Maintains a Sta Provides fou Sta Improves b Sta Provides au Sta Improves b Sta Provides au Sta Replicates fi Registers an Sta The Diagno Sta Maintains li Sta Coordinates Sta The Diagno Sta Maintains li Sta The Disgno Sta Maintains li Sta The DNS Clin Sta The DNS Clin Sta Inselse you This service Sta	attus Stariup rype Manual arted Manual arted Manual arted Automatic arted Automatic arted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic Manual tarted Manual tarted Manual tarted Manual tarted Manual Manual tarted Manual Manual tarted Manual tarted Manual	Log On Ass Local Syste Local Syste Network S Local Syste Network S Local Syste Network S Local Syste	More Actions Distributed Transa More Actions
		Geogle Updater Service Geogle Updater Service Group Policy Client	Publishes th Sta Sta The service Sta	arted Automatic tarted Automatic tarted Automatic	Local Servi Local Syste Local Syste ▼	
	Extended Standard	•	III		4	

- 5. If the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service is not started, right-click on the **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** service, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 6. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
- 7. In the Service status section, click Start.
- 8. Click OK.

Configure the Firewall to Allow DCOM Communication in Windows 7

The following procedure presumes that you are using the firewall delivered by Microsoft with Windows 7. If you are using third-party firewall software, please consult that product's documentation.

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
- 2. In the left panel section, select Allow a program or feature though Windows Firewall.
- 3. In the Allowed Programs dialog box, click Allow another program.
- 4. In the Add a Program dialog box, click Browse.
- 5. In the **Browse** dialog box, type **%SYSTEMROOT%\SYSTEM32\MSDTC.exe** in the **File name** box, and click **Open**.
- 6. Click Add.

7. Verify that **Distributed Transaction Coordinator** has been added to the **Allowed programs and features** list.

10.0		la.			×
🗸 🕞 🗢 🍻 « Wind 🕨 Allowed Program	ms 🔻	Search Cont	rol Panel		\$
llow programs to communicate th	arough W	indows Firewall		-	
add change or remove allowed programs	and norts of	ick Change settings			
least and the sight of allowing a supersum to a		, ,		Change cettin	aac
that are the risks of allowing a program to co	ommunicates			Change setur	igs
For your security, some settings are man	aged by you	r system administrate	or.		
• For your security, some securitys are man	agea by you	system daministrati			
Allowed programs and features:					
Name	Domain	Home/Work (Pri	Public	Group Policy	*
Connect to a Network Projector				No	
Core Networking	✓	\checkmark	\checkmark	No	
Dell Enhanced TCP/IP				No	=
Dell Enhanced TCP/IP	✓			No	
☑ DHCP	\checkmark			Yes	
☑ DHCP	\checkmark			Yes	
Distributed Transaction Coordinator	✓	✓		No	
File and Printer Sharing	~			Yes	
File and Printer Sharing	✓	•	\checkmark	No	
GMailNotifierForSnarl	\checkmark	•	\checkmark	No	
✓ HomeGroup		✓		No	
iSCSI Service				No	Ŧ
			Details.	Remov	/e
			Allow a	nother prograr	n
			OK	Cano	cel

NOTE Make sure that the **File and Printer Sharing** option is checked. This is necessary for Project Management, connection to the site database for the first time, and submission of Intergraph Batch Services jobs to other workstations to work properly.

- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Restart your computer so that the changes can take effect.

IMPORTANT The firewall can reset itself to its default settings. If you encounter the error **"Cannot enlist SQL PDS with MSDTC**", review your Windows Firewall settings and verify that they are as outlined in this procedure.

Windows Firewall Instructions for RPC Dynamic Ports

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
- 2. In the left panel section, select **Advanced settings**.
- 3. In the left panel section, select Inbound Rules.
- 4. In the right panel section under **Actions**, click **New Rule**.
- 5. Select Port, and then click Next.
- 6. Select **TCP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 7. Type 135 in the Specific local ports box.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 10. Verify that Domain, Private, and Public are selected, and then click Next.

- 11. In the **Name** box, type RPC.
- 12. In the **Description** box, type Smart 3D Name Generator RPC.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. Right-click the new RPC rule in the list, and then select Properties.
- 15. Select the Protocols and Ports tab.
- 16. In the Local port option, select RPC Dynamic Ports.
- 17. Click OK.
- 18. Restart your computer so that the changes can take effect.

Windows Firewall Instructions for Microsoft SQL Server 2008

- 1. Click Start > Control Panel > System and Security > Windows Firewall.
- 2. In the left panel section, select Advanced settings.
- 3. In the left panel section, select Inbound Rules.
- 4. In the right panel section under **Actions**, click **New Rule**.
- 5. Select **Port**, and then click **Next**.
- 6. Select **TCP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 7. Type 1433 in the **Specific local ports** box.
- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 10. Verify that Domain, Private, and Public are selected, and then click Next.
- 11. In the Name box, type SQL 2008 Instance.
- 12. In the Description box, type Smart 3D Name Generator SQL 2008 Instance.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. In the right panel section under Actions, click New Rule.
- 15. Select **Port**, and then click **Next**.
- 16. Select **UDP** and **Specific local ports**.
- 17. Type 1434 in the **Specific local ports** box.
- 18. Click Next.
- 19. Select Allow the connection, and then click Next.
- 20. Verify that Domain, Private, and Public are selected, and then click Next.
- 21. In the Name box, type SQL 2008 Browser.
- 22. In the Description box, type Smart 3D Name Generator SQL 2008 Browser.
- 23. Click Finish.

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client

The following prerequisite software is required in order to install and use the software on a client computer:

- Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update
- Microsoft XML 6.0
- Microsoft Data Access Components 2.8.1 or higher
- Microsoft Office
- Adobe Acrobat Reader
- SmartPlant License Manager 2010 (V11.0)

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Database Server (on page 43)

Install Microsoft .NET Framework

Stop any real-time virus checkers before you proceed because they can interfere with the installation. If you are running Windows Vista, you must install .Net Framework 3.5 on Vista because it is not delivered with Vista. If you are running Windows 7, .Net Framework 3.0 SP2, and 3.5 SP1 are already included with the operating system so you can skip this procedure.

.NET Framework 3.5 Installation

- 1. You must be logged on to the server computer as an administrator.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the CD does not start automatically, double-click setup.exe in the root folder of the DVD.

- 3. Click Prerequisite Software.
- 4. Click Microsoft .NET Framework 3.5 SP1 Installation.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. On the License Agreement page, click **I agree** and then click **Install**.
- 7. When installation completes, click **OK**.

NOTE The software also supports the latest .NET Framework 3.5 service packs. To check for the latest service pack, click **Start > Windows Update**.

On Windows 2008 R2 Server, .NET Framework 3.5.1 is installed by default. You can confirm this by looking at the Role Services in Server Manager.

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100)

Install Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update is required before installing SmartPlant 3D on a client computer. The installation of SmartPlant 3D will not proceed until VC++ 2008 SP1 is installed on the computer. Click **Yes** if you prompted to install this requirement.

- 1. You must be logged on to the server computer as an administrator.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the CD does not start automatically, double-click Setup.exe in the root folder of the DVD.

- 3. Click Prerequisite Software.
- 4. Click Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 Redistributable Package with MFC Security Update.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. On the License Agreement page, click "I have read accept the license terms." and then click **Install**.
- 7. When installation completes, click Finish.

Install Microsoft XML 6.0

To install Microsoft XML 6.0, open your web browser and go to the *MSXML Developer Center Web Site* (*http://msdn.microsoft.com/xml/*). Follow the guidelines to click the appropriate link for downloading MSXML 6.0 on the workstation computer.

- 1. When downloading is complete, double-click the setup file.
- 2. On the **Welcome** page, click **Next**.
- 3. On the End-User License Agreement page, click I accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.
- 4. On the Customer Information page, enter your name and organization and click Next.
- 5. On the Choose Setup Type page, click Install Now.
- 6. Click **Finish** on the **Setup Complete** page.

See Also

Setting Up the Client (on page 81)

Install Microsoft Data Access Components

If you are using Microsoft SQL Server databases and intend to include the Project Management capabilities as part of the workstation computer setup, skip this procedure. The required MDAC component is included as part of the Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 release, which is a required prerequisite for installing the Project Management software on a workstation computer.

In order to run SmartPlant 3D, you must be running MDAC 2.8.1 or higher. You can download and install the required MDAC component from the *Data Developer Center MDAC Downloads* (*http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/data/aa937730*) web page.

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100)

Install Microsoft Office

Several of the SmartPlant 3D tasks require Microsoft Office. Designers need Microsoft Excel to create reports and system administrators rely on Excel to make changes to the reference data spreadsheets and bulk load them into the Catalog database.

The current release of the software supports Microsoft Office 2003, Office 2007, and Office 2010 (32-bit).

IMPORTANT

- The system language specified for Microsoft Office must be the same as the system language specified by the operating system. For example, if your operating system language is English, Microsoft Office must also be set to English.
- If you choose to do a custom installation of Office, be sure to select the .NET Programming Support for Excel, which is required for the Model Data Reuse command.

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100)

Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Client

Because system configurations and individual company standards vary, use this section as a checklist instead of step-by-step instructions for Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

NOTES

- Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 requires XML 6.0 and will automatically install it as part of the SQL Server 2008 Prerequisite installation.
- There are internationalization considerations concerning the SQL Server collation settings you specify that relate to reference data, using SmartPlant Enterprise integrated systems, Global Workshare Configuration, multiple locales, backup/restore, reports, and upgrading to future releases. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.
- If a XenApp 6.0 local data store (farm) will be used, Microsoft SQL Server Client must be installed before installing XenApp 6.0.
- 1. Insert your SQL Server DVD and start the setup program.

🏗 SQL Server Installation Center			
Planning Installation Maintenance	Ð	Hardware and Software Requirements View the hardware and software requirements.	
Tools Resources	3	Security Documentation View the security documentation.	
Advanced Options	•	Online Release Notes View the latest information about the release.	
	ĵ	System Configuration Checker Launch a tool to check for conditions that prevent a successful SQL Server installation.	
SQL Server 2008	F	Install Upgrade Advisor	•

2. From the **Planning** page, select **System Configuration Checker** to check for pre-requisite applications as well as identify potential installation problems.

NOTE You may be asked to restart your computer if any pre-requisite applications were installed.

3. Click Installation and select the New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation option.



- 4. As you go through the installation process, make sure you install the **Setup Support Files** and review any Setup Support Rules that identify potential problems.
- 5. When you get to **Feature Selection**, select the client features that you want to include:
 - Client Tools Connectivity
 - Management Tools Basic
 - Management Tools Complete
 - SQL Server Books Online

Ş	Features:
2	Instance Features
$\left\{ \right\}$	Database Engine Services
Į	📃 SQL Server Replication 👔
{	Full-Text Search
2	📃 Analysis Services 🗧
Ł	Reporting Services
Ž.	Shared Features
2	📃 Business Intelligence Development Studio 👘 🐐
Ş	🗹 Client Tools Connectivity 🧧
ł	Integration Services
Į	🔲 Client Tools Backwards Compatibility
ξ	📃 Client Tools SDK 🖉
ŝ	🗹 SQL Server Books Online 💦 🖓
ł	🗹 Management Tools - Basic
ž	🗹 Management Tools - Complete 🔰 💈
2	📃 SQL Client Connectivity SDK
Ĵ.	📃 Microsoft Sync Framework
Ş.	Redistributable Features 🤰
	and a second state of the second

- 6. When you get to **Installation Rules**, make sure all operations have passed.
- 7. From Ready to Install, click Install.
- 8. When the installation has been completed, review the summary log file for any problems.
- 9. Before you use the software, you must register it. See *Register SQL Server 2008* (on page 105).
- 10. Install any required service packs or upgrades for SQL Server 2008. See *Install any Required SQL Server 2008 Upgrades* (on page 47).

Register SQL Server 2008

Before using the Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 software, you must register the database server with the workstation computer.

1. Open SQL Server Management Studio and click View > Registered Servers. Registered Servers appear in the left tree view.

والمستحدين المشرعة والمحسبات المعتققة فالمحصل ويستعدد والمصارف المراجع والمراجع المراجع المسترين والمحسور
Registered Servers
间 🤪 🗈 🛍 👘
🕞 📑 Database Engine
🔰 🛛 🔁 Local Server Groups
Central Management Servers
المتحديد محرب منع محرف محمد المحمد المحمد المحمد محرف

- 2. In the tree view, right-click **Database Engine**, and select **New > Server Registration** in the shortcut menu. The **New Server Registration** dialog box appears.
- 3. On the **General** tab, enter or select the name of the server you want to register.
- 4. Click Save.

NOTE If you intend to use the server computer in a Global Workshare Configuration, register the server with a fully qualified domain. For example, a server on the INGRPPO domain named WORKFLOW5 must be registered as WORKFLOW5.INGRPPO.COM. For more information about using Workshare, see the *Project Management User's Guide*, available from **Help** > **Printable Guides** in the software.

5. Exit Management Studio.

Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software

Because system configurations and individual company standards vary, use this section as a checklist instead of step-by-step instructions. Please contact Intergraph Customer Support for specific configuration questions.

IMPORTANT

- SmartPlant 3D is a 32-bit application that uses the 32-bit Oracle Client even when loaded on a 64-bit client operating system.
- Do not use the Oracle "light client" as it does not include some DLLs required by SmartPlant 3D.

See Also

Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2 (on page 106) Configure the Oracle Client (on page 107) Verify Startup of Oracle Client Services (on page 107) Initialize the Oracle Database (on page 57)

Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2

Installation of the full Oracle Client software is required for a workstation computer so that the software can connect to the Oracle database. After the Oracle Client software is installed, you will configure the software so that your computer can communicate with the Oracle database.

- 1. Select **Custom** on the **Select Installation Type** screen, and click **Next**.
- 2. Select a language in the Select Product Languages screen, and click Next.
- 3. Specify the **Oracle Base** location for the base folder and the **Software Location** for the home folder by browsing to the location, and click **Next**.
- 4. On the Available Product Components screen, select the following components:
 - Oracle Database Utilities
 - SQL *Plus
 - Enterprise Manager Minimal Integration
 - Oracle Net
 - Oracle Connection Manager
 - Oracle ODBC Driver
 - Oracle Services for Microsoft Transaction Server
 - Oracle Administration Assistant for Windows
 - Oracle Counters for Windows Performance Monitor
 - Oracle Objects for OLE
 - Oracle Provider for OLE DB
 - Oracle Data Provider for .NET
- 5. Specify port number 2030 in the **Specify port number** field on the **Oracle Services for Microsoft Transaction Services** screen, and click **Next**.

The software performs a prerequisite check before continuing.

- Click Finish on the Summary screen.
 A progress bar tracks the progress of the installation.
- 7. When installation is complete, you must install Patch 8.

For more details, see *Appendix: Install and Configure Oracle Software* (on page 197) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

Now that the Oracle Client is installed, you can configure the client. For more information, see *Configure the Oracle Client* (on page 107).

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software (on page 106)

Configure the Oracle Client

Client computers need to be configured before they can connect to an Oracle database. To configure the client computer, you must first install Oracle Client software as outlined:

- 1. Start Oracle Net Manager.
- 2. Select the Service Naming node, *Install Oracle Client Software 11g Release 2* (on page 106), and then click the green plus sign to start the Net Service Name Wizard.

Wrutacie Net Manager - C:\Uracie\product\10	
	Eile Edit Command Help
t	ାଟ-ﷺ Oracle Net Configuration ପ-t∰ Local
×	Profile
2	B → Listeners
Ċ	

3. Specify a Service Name.

NOTE The **Service Name** must be the same on the server and client. You will need to provide this net service name when creating databases, bulkloading and configuring Workshare.

- 4. Select TCP/IP (Internet Protocol).
- 5. Specify the **Host name** (typically the network name of the database server computer) and **Port Number** (default=1521) for your protocol settings.
- 6. Specify the Service Name and Connection Type.
- 7. Test the new service.
- 8. If the default test fails, click **Change Login**, enter a valid username/password combination and, retest the connection.
- 9. When the login test is successful, click **Finish** to close the wizard.
- 10. Click File > Save Network Configuration to save your new network service.

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software (on page 106)

Verify Startup of Oracle Client Services

- 1. Open the **Control Panel** and double-click **Administrative Tools**.
- 2. Double-click Services.

TIP You can also right-click **My Computer** and select **Manage**. In the **Computer Management** window, expand the **Services and Applications** node, and click **Services**.

 Verify that the Status field is set to Started and the Startup Type field is set to Automatic, for each of the following services:

Distributed Transaction Coordinator

OracleMTSRecoveryService

- 4. To change the **Status** or **Startup Type** fields, right-click the service name, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 5. On the General tab, select Automatic from the Startup type list.
- 6. In the **Service status** section, click **Start**.
- 7. Click **OK**.

See Also

Installing and Configuring Oracle Client Software (on page 106)
Install Smart 3D Client Software

Prior to installing SmartPlant 3D on a workstation computer, verify that the workstation computer meets the required hardware and software requirements and that all prerequisite software has been installed. For more information about hardware and software requirements, see *SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations* (on page 22) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*. For more information about the prerequisite software, see *Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client* (on page 100).

If you have an older version of SmartPlant 3D software installed on your computer, uninstall it before loading the new software. For more information, see *Remove Smart 3D Software* (on page 182) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

Approximately 1.5 GB of hard disk space is required to perform a default setup of the software. Alternative installation configurations have other hard disk space requirements. Prior to installing SmartPlant 3D on a workstation computer, select and size the hard disk partitions accordingly. For additional information, see *Disk Partitioning Guidelines* (on page 27) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

You must have administrator privileges on the computer to install the software. If you are installing on Windows Vista or Windows 7, use the **Run as Administrator** option.

If you have not already installed and configured SmartPlant License Manager on your computer, we recommend doing so before installing SmartPlant 3D.

IMPORTANT SmartPlant 3D requires the SmartPlant License Manager software for concurrent licensing for both the core SmartPlant 3D product and for each module. This licensing software is delivered on its own CD that comes with your Smart 3D DVD. For more information about using and configuring concurrent licensing, see the *SmartPlant License Manager Installation and User's Guide* (SPLMInstall_UserGuide.pdf).

- 1. Insert the **Intergraph Smart 3D** DVD. If the DVD does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.
- 2. Click Smart 3D Installation.
- 3. Click Next on the Welcome to the Smart 3D Installation Wizard page.

IMPORTANT Because the current version of SmartPlant 3D supports both SQL Server and Oracle databases, the setup checks the computer to verify that the correct version of the database client software is installed. If the software determines that Oracle Client is not installed (for example, if you are using the software with SQL Server databases), the software displays the following message:



If you are planning to use the software with SQL Server databases, click **Yes** to continue installing SmartPlant 3D. If you are planning to use the software with Oracle databases, click **No** to exit the Smart 3D setup and install the Oracle client software.

4. On the **User Information** page, enter information in the **Full Name**, **Organization**, and **Serial number** boxes. The serial number sticker is located on the CD package.

IMPORTANT The serial number is used for product identification only. A license key is required to run SmartPlant 3D. For more information about installing and using SmartPlant License Manager, see the *SmartPlant License Manager Installation and User's Guide* (SPLMInstall_UserGuide.pdf).

- 5. Click Next.
- 6. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list, and click **Display** to view the license agreement.

IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have Acrobat Reader installed on the client computer in order to view the license agreement. If the software detects that Acrobat Reader is not installed, a message box appears. To install Acrobat Reader (from the **Intergraph Smart 3D** DVD) and continue with the installation, click **Yes**. If you click **No** on the message box, the setup process immediately stops without installing the client software.

- 7. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document, and click **Yes** on the **Software License Agreement** page to accept the terms.
- 8. On the **Destination Folder** page, click **Browse** and select the folder location for the client software. Then click **OK**.

 On the Select Features page, select the features that you want to install. For example, if you want to be able to create databases in SmartPlant 3D, click the Project Management and SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity options, and select Will be installed on local hard drive.

🔀 Installation for Smart 3D	
Select Features Please select which features you would like to	install.
	Feature Description: This feature will remain uninstalled. This feature requires 0KB on your hard drive. It has 0 of 5 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 13MB on your hard drive.
Wise Installation Wizard (R) Disk Cost Reset	Browse

Before adding and removing features from the setup, review the dependencies that can exist between one feature and another.

- 10. Click Next.
- 11. On the **Ready to Install the Application** page, verify the installation summary. Click **Back** to return to any previous pages and make changes.
- 12. Click Next to begin installing client software.
- 13. Click Finish to exit the installation sequence.
- 14. Restart the computer to complete the installation.

Additional Information

During the setup, the %temp% value is defined as the user %temp% of the person who runs the setup. In Windows, each user's C:\Documents and Settings*username*\Local Settings\Temp is protected from other Windows users. Consequently, you must set the system environment variable TEMP value to a folder location where everyone has write access (that is, C:\Temp). For more information about editing system variables, see the MS Windows online documentation.

If you installed the **Piping Specification Remote Access Server** feature during the setup, you must verify that the COM+ application is installed and configured on the administrator computer. For more information, see *Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service* (*Vista and Windows 7*) (on page 126) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

You can install the **Database Interference Detection Service** on a different computer. The **Database Interference Detection Service** requires that the optional **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options be delivered. For more information, see *Install Database Interference Detection Service* (on page 154) in the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide*.

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100) Application Maintenance (on page 179)

Install Service Packs

Service Packs contain fixes for known application issues. You should install only those service packs that contain fixes that you need or if you are instructed to do so by Intergraph Support. Service pack installations contain only those parts of the application that have changed, and therefore, must be installed "on top" of a regular installation.

IMPORTANT You must have administrative privileges on the computer to install the service pack. If you are running Windows Vista, you can use the **Run as Administrator** option.

- 1. Exit all other applications running on your computer.
- 2. Double-click the service pack's setup.exe file.
- 3. If you are installing the service pack on the reference data server, select **Reference Data Service Pack X Installation**.

-OR-

If you are installing the service pack on a client workstation, select **Service Pack X** Installation.

- 4. Click **OK** on the exit programs message.
- 5. Click Install.

smartPlant 3D Service Pack - In	stallation		—
Click Install to run this service pack in	stallation.		
	<u>U</u> ninstall	[nstall]	Cancel

- 6. If you want to create an uninstall program, click **Yes**. Otherwise, click **No**. If you choose not to create an uninstall program, you must remove the entire application to remove the service pack changes.
- 7. Click **OK** to confirm the installation folder. This folder should be the same folder where you installed the regular installation.

SmartPlant 3D Service Pack - Destination Location	×
SmartPlant 3D V7.0 Service Pack 4.	ОК
Verify the location where the product is installed and click OK.	Cancel
C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D\	

You will see WinZip Self-Extractor windows appear as the service pack installs.

WinZip Self-Extractor - Middle.exe	X
To unzip all files in Middle.exe to the specified folder press the Unzip button.	Unzip
Unzip to folder: C:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D\ Browse	Run WinZip Close
Verwrite files without prompting	About
	Help
Unzipping igrAlign412.ocx	

See Also

Loading Prerequisite Software on the Client (on page 100) Application Maintenance (on page 179)

Configure for Large Model Drawing Generation

When you are working with large models, especially in the Drawings and Reports task, we recommend that you enable the 3GB option for 32-bit operating systems and have 4GB or more RAM to improve drawing generation performance. While there is no hard and fast rule as to what constitutes a large model, we recommend that you enable the 3GB option if you are going to create drawings that contain more than 5,000 elements. That number can be lower if the drawing elements are complex.

For Windows 7 and Vista

Windows 7 and Windows Vista use the BCDedit.exe (Boot Configuration Data Editor) utility to make 3GB of RAM accessible for software on 32-bit Windows 7 and Windows Vista computers. This utility is run from a command window as an administrator. You do not need to run this utility for 64-bit versions of Windows 7 or Windows Vista.

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories.
- 2. Right-click on Command Prompt and select Run as Administrator.
- 3. Click Continue when prompted by the User Account Control.
- 4. Enable 3GB RAM mode by keying in:

bcdedit /set IncreaseUserVa 3072

Disable 3GB RAM mode by keying in:

bcdedit /deletevalue IncreaseUserVa

5. Restart your computer.

For Windows XP

You must have administrative privileges on the computer to modify the boot.ini file.

1. Open the Control Panel and double-click System.

2. In the System Properties dialog box, select the Advanced tab.

System Properties ?	×
System Restore Automatic Updates Remote General Computer Name Hardware Advanced	
You must be logged on as an Administrator to make most of these changes.	
Visual effects, processor scheduling, memory usage, and virtual memory	
<u>Settings</u>	
User Profiles Desktop settings related to your logon	
<u>Settings</u>	
Startup and Recovery System startup, system failure, and debugging information	
Settings	
Environment Variables Error Reporting	
OK Cancel Apply	

- 3. Click Settings under Startup and Recovery.
- 4. On the **Startup and Recovery** tab, click **Edit** under **System startup** to open the *boot.ini* file in **Notepad**.

St	tartup and Recovery ?	Ľ
	System startup Default operating system:	
	"Drive C (SP3D)" /noexecute=optin /fastdetect	
	☑ Time to display list of operating systems: 30 🚊 second	ls
	\checkmark Time to display recovery options when needed: 30 $\stackrel{*}{\Rightarrow}$ second	s
	To edit the startup options file manually, click Edit.	

5. In the **[Operating Systems]** section of the *boot.ini* file, add the following switch to the end of the startup line that includes the **/fastdetect** switch: **/3GB**:

[operating systems] multi(0)disk(0)rdisk(0)partition(1)\WINDOWS="Microsoft Windows XP Professional" /fastdetect /3GB

- 6. Save the changes to the *boot.ini* file and close **Notepad**.
- 7. Click **OK** two times to close the open dialog boxes, and then restart the computer for the changes to take effect.

Configure for an Integrated Environment

Configuring SmartPlant 3D to work in an integrated environment provides a platform for data exchange, sharing, and integration across various software tools, enabling concurrent use and rapid communication among all SmartPlant 3D project participants. Critical information is stored only once in a data-neutral warehouse, eliminating duplication and ensuring that timely, accurate data is always available.

Two steps are required to take advantage of the SmartPlant integration functionality:

1. Install the SmartPlant Client and Schema Component on your SmartPlant 3D workstation computers, as necessary. For more information about installing SmartPlant components, see the *Integration Setup Guide*, available in the SmartPlant Enterprise documentation set.

IMPORTANT In order to take full advantage of the SmartPlant integration functionality, you must install the SmartPlant Client and Schema Component on a SmartPlant 3D workstation computer on which the **Project Management**, **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity**, and **Piping Specification Remote Access Server** options are installed.

 Use the Project Management task to register your SmartPlant 3D model. For more information about registering models, see the *Project Management User's Guide*, available from Help > Printable Guides in the SmartPlant 3D software.

Register Solid Edge .DLL File

While not a prerequisite, Solid Edge can be used with SmartPlant 3D. For optimum performance, install Solid Edge prior to running the SmartPlant 3D software setup. In the event that Solid Edge is installed after SmartPlant 3D, you will need to manually register the *Pvdt80.ocx* file.

Additionally, if you uninstall or reinstall either SmartPlant 3D or Solid Edge from the workstation computer, use the steps outlined in the following procedure to manually register the *Pvdt80.ocx* file.

IMPORTANT You must have administrator privileges for the workstation computer on which you wish to register the file.

- 1. Open Windows Explorer. On the Windows task bar, right-click on **Start** and select **Explore**.
- 2. Browse to [*INSTALLDIR*]\SmartPlant\3d\Core\Register and double-click **RegisterPvtd80.vbs** to register the Pvdt80.ocx file on your computer.

See Also

Third-Party Integration (on page 13)

Integrating with PDS

To take advantage of the PDS integration functionality included with the software, PDS software is required. In addition to the standard PDS setup, an additional set of files external to PDS are also required. For information about installing the files you need to reference a PDS model in the software, see *Install PDS Data Access* (on page 117). For information about installing the files you need to export PDS model data into the software, see *Install PDS Export Tools* (on page 116).

IMPORTANT

 The SmartPlant 3D PDS Project Translators component that is required to support the export of PDS model data into the software is a separately licensed product. For licensing information, please contact Intergraph Support (http://support.intergraph.com/).

Install PDS Export Tools

Installing the **PDS Export Tools** component further extends the PDS integration capabilities by allowing you to export Piping, HVAC, Electrical, Equipment, and Structure model data from PDS into SmartPlant 3D.

Before installing the **PDS Export Tools** component, you must install the following prerequisite software on a computer on which the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options are also installed:

- Batch Services
- RIS_Share (RIS Shared Components)
- MicroStation
- SmartPlant License Manager
- PD_Shell (Plant Design System environment)

For more information about acquiring these components, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*).

IMPORTANT The **PDS Export Tools** component is a separately licensed product. Before attempting to install the component, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*) for licensing information.

- 1. Log on to the computer with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.

- 3. Select Prerequisite Software.
- 4. Select PDS Export Tools Installation.
- 5. Click **Continue** on the **Welcome** page.

TIP If the setup determines that PDS is not installed, an error message appears. Click **OK**. Install PD_Shell and then re-try this procedure.

NOTE For more information about exporting PDS model data into the software, see the *Common User's Guide* available with the **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

Install PDS Data Access

SmartPlant 3D integrates with PDS version 2010 SE and higher, thereby extending your plant design capabilities. When you install the PDS data access setup files, you enable the software to communicate with PDS. As such, you can reference PDS design data in your model. You can also use the software to migrate piping specifications and associated catalog data from PDS, or directly translate PDS data into the software.

You need to install the **PDS Data Access** component on the administration computer where you will use the Project Management task to reference the PDS project and on each client workstation that needs to reference the PDS project.

Before installing the **PDS Data Access** component, you must install the following prerequisite software on a computer on which the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options are also installed:

- Batch Services
- RIS_Share (RIS Shared Components)
- SmartPlant License Manager
- PD_Shell (Plant Design System environment)

If you are accessing PDS projects from the same computer, then you need to install SmartPlant License Manager along with the other PDS products as required. For more information about acquiring these components, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*).

Locate the Schema File

- 1. Log on with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Install RIS if you have not already done so.
- 3. Click Start > All Programs > RISX.X > RIS Schema Manager.
- 4. In the RIS Schema Manager dialog box, click Schema File.
- 5. In the Schema File dialog box, click Locate Schema File.
- 6. Define the location of your PDS project schema file.
- 7. Click Apply.
- 8. Click Close.

Configure the Plant Design System Environment (PD_Shell)

- 1. Log on with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Install PD_Shell if you have not already done so.
- 3. Click Start > All Programs > PD_Shell > PDS Configure.
- 4. Click Modify.
- 5. Type the Proj_File information for the PDS project.
- 6. Type the Proj_Addr information for the PDS project.
- 7. Click Continue.
- 8. Click OK.

Create Batch Queues

- 1. Log on with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Install Batch Services if you have not already done so.

- 3. Click Start > All Programs > PD_Shell > PDS Queue.
- 4. Create a batch queue for PD_Shell.

Verify Access to the Project in PD_Shell

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > PD_Shell > PD_Shell.
- 2. Verify that the PDS project that you want to reference displays in the PD_Shell environment. If it is not available in the PD_Shell environment, you will not be able to reference it.

Install PDS Data Access

- 1. Log on with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.

- 3. Select Prerequisite Software.
- 4. Select PDS Data Access Installation.
- 5. Click Continue on the Welcome page.
- 6. Click **OK** when the installation is complete.

Install Smart 3D PDS Project Translators

Installing the **Smart 3D PDS Project Translators** component further extends the PDS integration capabilities by allowing you to export Piping, HVAC, Electrical, Equipment, and Structure model data from PDS into SmartPlant 3D.

Before installing the **Smart 3D PDS Project Translators** component, you must install the following prerequisite software on a computer on which the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options are also installed:

- Batch Services
- RIS_Share (RIS Shared Components)
- MicroStation
- SmartPlant License Manager
- PD_Shell (Plant Design System environment)

For more information about acquiring these components, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*).

IMPORTANT The **Smart 3D PDS Project Translators** component is a separately licensed product. Before attempting to install the component, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*) for licensing information.

- 1. Log on to the computer with a user account that has administrator privileges.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.

- 3. In the Smart 3D Installation wizard, click Data Converters.
- 4. Click Smart 3D PDS Project Translators Installation.
- 5. Click **Next** on the **Welcome to the Smart 3D Project Translators Installation Wizard** page.
- 6. On the **User Information** page, enter information in the **Full Name**, **Organization**, and **Serial number** boxes. The serial number sticker is located on the DVD jewel case.

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list, and click **Display** to view the license agreement.

IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have Acrobat Reader installed on the client computer in order to view the license agreement. You can install Acrobat Reader from the Adobe web site, www.adobe.com.

- 9. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document, and click **Yes** on the **Software License Agreement** page to accept the terms.
- 10. On the **Ready to Install the Application** page, verify the installation summary. Click **Back** to return to any previous install pages and make changes.
- 11. Click **Next** to begin installing the software.

12. Click **Finish** to exit the installation sequence.

NOTE For more information about exporting PDS model data into the software, see the *Common User's Guide* available with the **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID

To take full advantage of the software's SmartPlant P&ID integration functionality, we recommend that you install the Piping Specification Remote Access Server and Client setups. The remote access server setup is available as an option in the SmartPlant 3D Installation setup for the workstation computer. The remote access client is an available option with the SmartPlant P&ID product and is installed on a computer running SmartPlant P&ID.

The Piping Specification utility works with PDS 3D or SmartPlant 3D to validate the piping materials class with the temperatures, pressures, and diameters assigned to the pipe run. The utility also searches commodity codes (in all 3D databases) and fabrication categories (in PDS 3D databases only) for piping components. The database tables and library files in the 3D product provide source information for the validation and search. For more information about this utility, see the *SmartPlant P&ID Remote Pipe Specification Access Quick Reference Guide*, which is available in the **Technical Notes and White Papers** section on the *eCustomer SmartPlant P&ID Customer Support Site*

http://crmweb.intergraph.com/ecustomer_enu/start.swe?SWEVI=&SWECmd=Refresh&SWERF =1&SWEFullRefresh=1&TglPrtclRfrsh=1.

NOTES

- When installing the Piping Specification Remote Access Server component, you must also
 install the Bulkload Reference Data and the SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity components
 as they are required for the Piping Specifications Remote Access Server to work.
- In order to use SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access you must perform additional installation and configuration on the computers running SmartPlant P&ID. See the Installing SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client section in the SmartPlant P&ID Installation and Upgrade Guide for more information about installing the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client. Also, see the Piping Specification Utility section in the SmartPlant P&ID Utilities Guide for additional configuration information.
- The "server" used by the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client and the SP3D P&ID Client Tester application is the computer on which the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server COM+ application has been installed and configured. This server can be different from the database server on which the Site database server and Site schema server reside.

For more specific information about using the SmartPlant P&ID integration functionality included with the software, please contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*).

See Also

Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (XP Client) (on page " on page 126)

Register the Site Database for P&ID Access (on page 134)

Enable Network Access in Windows Server 2008

The following procedures for enabling network access are required only if you are using Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit) on the computer.

Enable COM+ Network Access

- 1. Open the Control Panel.
- 2. Click Turn Windows features on or off to open the Server Manager.
- 3. On the Roles page in Server Manager, click 🍻 Add Roles. The Add Roles Wizard opens.
- 4. Ensure that you have completed the preceding steps listed on the Before You Begin page, and click Next.
- 5. On the Select Server Roles page, select Application Server and click Next.

NOTE If the server finds any of the required features for Application Server are missing, a prompt is displayed informing you to install those features. Click Add Required Features to allow the server to install them automatically.

- 6. On the Application Server page, click Next.
- 7. On the Select Role Services page, select COM+ Network Access, and click Next.
- 8. Confirm your installation selections and click Install.
- 9. After the installation is complete, click **Close** to exit the wizard.

INOTE If Application Server is already enabled on Windows Server 2008, follow these steps to enable COM+ Network Access:

- 10. Open the Control Panel.
- 11. Click Turn Windows features on or off to open the Server Manager.
- 12. Click Roles > Application Server.
- 13. In the Role Services section, click 🍻 Add Role Services.
- 14. On the Select Role Services page, select COM+ Network Access, and click Install.

Enable Network DTC Access

- 1. Open Component Services by clicking Start > Administrative Tools > Component Services.
- 2. In the console tree, expand Component Services > Computers > My Computer > **Distributed Transaction Coordinator > Local DTC.**
- 3. Right-click Local DTC, and select Properties.
- 4. In the Security tab of the Local DTC Properties dialog box, enable Network DTC Access, and click OK.

An MSDTC Service message box is displayed.

- 5. Click Yes to stop and restart the MSDTC service.
- Click Yes after the MSDTC service is restarted.

IMPORTANT If you have additional resource manager services that participate in the distributed transactions, you must stop and restart those services as well.

See Also

Instructions for Microsoft Windows Server 2008 (on page 39)

Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (XP Client)

In order to take full advantage of the SmartPlant P&ID integration tools available with the software, we recommend that the Piping Specification Remote Access Server service be installed and properly configured on the system on which SmartPlant 3D has been installed. Perform the following steps to verify and, if necessary, manually install and configure the COM+ application.

IMPORTANT

- You must have administrator privileges on the workstation computer in order to perform this installation procedure.
- The Piping Specification Remote Access Server service is installed as part of the SmartPlant 3D Installation setup. You must also install the Bulkload Reference Data and the SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity components as they are required for the Piping Specifications Remote Access Server to work. For more information, see *Install Smart 3D Client Software* (on page 109).
- The computer on which you have installed the Piping Specification Remote Access Server becomes a "server" for SmartPlant P&ID clients and therefore must be powered on and available whenever P&ID needs to access the catalog. For example, you could use the computer that is used for the Interference Checking service.

Verify SP3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service

- 1. Open the Control Panel and double-click Administrative Tools.
- In the Administrative Tools window, double-click Component Services to start the component services Microsoft Management Console (MMC) snap-in. The Component Services window appears as shown in the following illustration:

🚡 Component Services		
] 🚡 <u>C</u> onsole <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> e	lp	_ B ×
Action ⊻iew	🖻 🔃 🗙 🖆 🔯 😫 🎦 🔜 🏤 1	
Tree	Component Services	
Console Root		
⊡-¶i Event Viewer (Local) ⊡-∰i Services (Local)	Computers	

3. Expand the **Component Services** node under the **Console Root**, and then expand the **Computers** and **My Computer** nodes.



- 4. Expand the COM+ Applications node.
- Verify the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer icon appears under COM+ Applications. If it exists, skip to step 15. If it does not exist, perform steps 6-14 to install and configure the COM+ application.

Component Services	
] 📸 ⊆onsole <u>W</u> indow <u>H</u> elp	
$ \underline{A}_{ction} \underline{V}_{iew} \underline{\downarrow} \Leftrightarrow \Rightarrow \underline{E} \overline{E} \underline{V} \underline{E} \underline{E}$) 🗷 🗖 🗄 🛗 🎬
Tree	Component Services 1 object(s)
Console Root Component Services Computers COM+ Applications COM+ QC Dead Letter Queue Listener COM+ Utilities COM+ Utilities SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer System Application Cordinator Event Viewer (Local) Computer Computer C	Computers

- 6. Select **Com+ Applications** under the **My Computer** node, and then click **Action >New > Application** on the horizontal toolbar. The **COM+ Application Install Wizard** displays.
- 7. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Application Install Wizard page.
- 8. Select Create an empty application on the Install or Create a New Application page.
- 9. On the **Create an Empty Application** page, type **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** in the **Enter a name for the new application** text box.
- 10. Select Server application in the Activation type field, and then click Next.

11. On the **Set Application Identity** page, verify that **This user** is selected, and enter the user name and password to set the proper identity under which the COM+ application will run on the computer.

IMPORTANT You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the computer.

- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Click **Finish** to begin the installation.

TIP When installation is complete, a **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer.1** node is placed under **COM+ Applications**.

🚡 Component Services		
Console Window Help		
<u>A</u> ction ⊻iew ← → 🔁 🖬 🗙 😭 😫 **		8-0- 8-0- 8-0-
Tree	SP3DPipingSpec	RemoteAcce
Console Root		
Computers	Components	Roles
COM+ Applications		
System Application		
Event Viewer (Local)		
🗄 🦥 Services (Local)		

14. In the left tree view, right-click **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** and select **Properties**.

15. On the **Advanced** tab of the **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer Properties** dialog box, change the **Minutes until idle shutdown** value to **0**.

SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer Properties				
General Security Identity Activation Queuing Advanced				
Server Process Shutdown				
C Leave running when idle				
Minutes until idle <u>s</u> hutdown:				
Permission				
Disable deletion				
Disable <u>c</u> hanges				
Debugging				
Launch in debugger				
Debugger path: "C:\Program Files\Microsoft Visu Browse				
Enable Compensating Resource <u>Managers</u>				
Enable 3 <u>G</u> B support				
OK Cancel Apply				

3DPipingSp	ecRemol	teAcce	essServer Pi	operties		?
Advance	ed)		Dump	Poo	ling & F	Recycling
General	Secu	rity	Identity	Activat	ion	Queuing
- Authorizati	on — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —					
Enforc	e access	check	s for this applic	ation		
Convibula						
- Security Le	ver					
O Perfor	n access tu proporti	check:	s only at the <u>p</u> r at be included	ocess level on the obio	ot cont	out COM+
securi	y call con	itext wil	l not be availa	ble.	ccon	CAL COMP
	-					
Perform		check	s at the proces	e and comr	onent	laval
Securi	ty property	y will be	s all the proces e included on t	he object c	ontext.	The COM+
security call context is available.						
Software H	estriction	Policy				
	y <u>s</u> oftware	restric	tion policy			
Restriction Level:						
A. 0. 10 10	1 14					
Authenticatio	on <u>L</u> evel f	or Calls	:			
Packet						_
Impersonatio	n Level:					
Impersonate						-
			OK	Cano	el l	Apply

16. On the Security tab, disable Enforce access checks for this application and click OK.

- 17. Next, expand the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer and the Components nodes.
- Under the Components node, verify that the SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1 component appears. If it does exist, you are finished with this procedure. If it does not exist, perform steps 19-22.
- 19. On the horizontal toolbar, click **Action > New > Component**. The **COM Component Installation Wizard** appears.
- 20. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Component Install Wizard.
- 21. On the **Import or Install a Component** page, select **Install new component(s)** and browse for **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll**.

TIP The component **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll** is located in [*Product Folder*]\RefData\Middle\Bin.

22. Click **Next** on the **Install new components** page, then click **Finish** to complete the installation procedure.

23. The **Component Services** window shows the **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1** component installed in the **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** application.





Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID (on page 119)

Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (Vista and Windows 7)

In order to take full advantage of the SmartPlant P&ID integration tools available with the software, we recommend that the Piping Specification Remote Access Server service be installed and properly configured on the system on which SmartPlant 3D has been installed. Perform the following steps to verify and, if necessary, manually install and configure the COM+ application.

IMPORTANT

- You must have administrator privileges on the workstation computer in order to perform this installation procedure.
- The Piping Specification Remote Access Server service is installed as part of the SmartPlant 3D Installation setup. You must also install the Bulkload Reference Data and the SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity components as they are required for the Piping Specifications Remote Access Server to work. For more information, see *Install Smart 3D Client Software* (on page 109).
- The computer on which you have installed the Piping Specification Remote Access Server becomes a "server" for SmartPlant P&ID clients and therefore must be powered on and available whenever P&ID needs to access the catalog. For example, you could use the computer that is used for the Interference Checking service.

Verify SP3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.
- 2. Type **dcomcnfg**, and click **OK**. The **Component Services** window appears as shown in the following illustration:

Component Services			_ D _ X
le Action View Window	Help		_ 8 ×
🗢 🔿 🙎 🗔 🖾 🖉 🖪			
Console Root		Actions	
Component Services Event Viewer (Loss)	Granutar	Component Services	•
B Event viewer (Local)	Computers	More Actions	•
		,	

3. Expand the **Component Services** node under the **Console Root**, and then expand the **Computer** and **My Computer** nodes.

File Action View Window Help ← ↔ ← ↔ ← ↔	- 6 ×
Component Services Computers Computers DCOM + Applications My Computer More Action	· · · ·
▲ My Computer ▷ COM+ Applicatio ▷ DCOM Config ▷ Distributed Transaction Coordi ▷ Other but but and the second se	yns →

- 4. Expand the **COM+ Applications** node.
- Verify the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer icon appears under COM+ Applications. If it exists, skip to step 17. If it does not exist, perform steps 6-14 to install and configure the COM+ application.



- 6. Select **COM+ Applications** under the **My Computer** node, and then click **Action > New > Application** on the horizontal toolbar. The **COM+ Application Install Wizard** displays.
- 7. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Application Install Wizard page.
- 8. Select Create an empty application on the Install or Create a New Application page.
- 9. On the **Create an Empty Application** page, type **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** in the **Enter a name for the new application** text box.
- 10. Select Server application in the Activation type field, and then click Next.
- 11. On the **Set Application Identity** page, verify that **This user** is selected, and enter user name and password to set the proper identity under which the COM+ application will run on the computer.

IMPORTANT You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the computer.

- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Select CreatorOwner on the Add Application Roles page, and click Next.
- 14. On the **Add Users to Roles** page, add any additional users that may need access to this application, and click **Next**.
- 15. Click Finish to begin the installation.

TIP When the installation is complete, a **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** node is placed under **COM+ Applications**.



16. In the left tree view, right-click **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** and select **Properties**.

17. On the Advanced tab of the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer dialog box, select Enable idle shutdown and change the Minutes value to 0.

SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer Properties				
General Security Identity Activation Queuing Advanced Dump Pooling & Recycling				
Server Process Shutdown © Leave running when idle				
Enable idle shutdown: Minutes:				
Protection Disable deletion Disable changes				
Debugging Launch in debugger Debugger path: C:\Windows\system32\dlihost Browse				
Enable compensating resource managers Enable 3GB support				
Learn more about setting these properties.				
OK Cancel Apply				

18. On the Security tab, disable Enforce access checks for this application and click OK.

SP3DPipingSpecRemoteA	ccessServer Prop	erties	? ×		
Advanced	Dumm	Destro	* Desustan		
General Security	/ Identity	Activation	Queuing		
Authorization	lucinity	Activation	Gooding		
	e else fer this poplies	ting			
	looks for this applica				
Security Level					
Perform access ch Security property v security call contex	 Perform access checks only at the process level. Security property will not be included on the object context. COM+ security call context will not be available. 				
 Perform access ch Security property w security call contex 	Perform access checks at the process and component level. Security property will be included on the object context. The COM+ security call context is available.				
Software Restriction P	olicy				
Apply software restriction policy					
Restriction Level:			-		
Authentication Level for	Calls:				
Packet			•		
Impersonation Level:					
Impersonate			•		
Learn more about setting these properties.					
	ОК	Cancel	Apply		

- 19. Next, expand the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer and the Components nodes.
- Under the Components node, verify that the SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1 component appears. If it does exist, you are finished with this procedure. If it does not exist, perform steps 21-25.
- 21. On the horizontal toolbar, click **Action > New > Component**. The **COM Component Installation Wizard** appears.
- 22. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Component Install Wizard.
- 23. On the **Import or Install a Component** page, select **Install new component(s)** and browse for **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll**.

TIP The component **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll** is located in [*Product Folder*]\RefData\Middle\Bin.

- 24. Click **Next** on the **Install new components** page, then click **Finish** to complete the installation procedure.
- 25. The **Component Services** window shows the **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1** component installed in the **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** application.

See Also

Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID (on page 119)

File Server Sizing

You will need a computer to act as a file server with enough disk space for symbols and files. This computer does not need to be a high end-server, but should meet the minimum hardware requirements for a client computer. See *SmartPlant 3D Workstation Recommendations* (on page 22) for these requirements.

Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (Vista and Windows 7)

In order to take full advantage of the SmartPlant P&ID integration tools available with the software, we recommend that the Piping Specification Remote Access Server service be installed and properly configured on the system on which SmartPlant 3D has been installed. Perform the following steps to verify and, if necessary, manually install and configure the COM+ application.

IMPORTANT

- You must have administrator privileges on the workstation computer in order to perform this installation procedure.
- The Piping Specification Remote Access Server service is installed as part of the SmartPlant 3D Installation setup. You must also install the Bulkload Reference Data and the SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity components as they are required for the Piping Specifications Remote Access Server to work. For more information, see *Install Smart 3D Client Software* (on page 109).
- The computer on which you have installed the Piping Specification Remote Access Server becomes a "server" for SmartPlant P&ID clients and therefore must be powered on and available whenever P&ID needs to access the catalog. For example, you could use the computer that is used for the Interference Checking service.

Verify SP3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service

1. Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Run.

2. Type **dcomcnfg**, and click **OK**. The **Component Services** window appears as shown in the following illustration:

Component Services			
 File Action View Window File Action View Window File Action View Window 	Help		- 8 ×
Console Root Component Services Component Services Cocal) Cocal Services (Local)	Computers	Actions Component Services More Actions	•

3. Expand the **Component Services** node under the **Console Root**, and then expand the **Computer** and **My Computer** nodes.

Component Services			
 File Action View Window 	Help Name COM Applications DCOM Config Running Processes Distributed Transaction Coordi	Actions My Computer More Actions	
P Parking Processe P Parking Processes P Parking Processes			

- 4. Expand the **COM+ Applications** node.
- Verify the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer icon appears under COM+ Applications. If it exists, skip to step 17. If it does not exist, perform steps 6-14 to install and configure the COM+ application.



- 6. Select **COM+ Applications** under the **My Computer** node, and then click **Action > New > Application** on the horizontal toolbar. The **COM+ Application Install Wizard** displays.
- 7. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Application Install Wizard page.

- 8. Select Create an empty application on the Install or Create a New Application page.
- 9. On the **Create an Empty Application** page, type **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** in the **Enter a name for the new application** text box.
- 10. Select Server application in the Activation type field, and then click Next.
- 11. On the **Set Application Identity** page, verify that **This user** is selected, and enter user name and password to set the proper identity under which the COM+ application will run on the computer.

IMPORTANT You must specify an account with Windows administrative privileges on the computer.

- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Select CreatorOwner on the Add Application Roles page, and click Next.
- 14. On the **Add Users to Roles** page, add any additional users that may need access to this application, and click **Next**.
- 15. Click Finish to begin the installation.

TIP When the installation is complete, a **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** node is placed under **COM+ Applications**.



16. In the left tree view, right-click **SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer** and select **Properties**.

17. On the Advanced tab of the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer dialog box, select Enable idle shutdown and change the Minutes value to 0.

SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer Pro	operties ?
General Security Identity Advanced Dump	Activation Queuing Pooling & Recycling
Server Process Shutdown © Leave running when idle	
Enable idle shutdown: Minu Protection	ites: 0
Disable deletion	
Disable changes	
Debugging	
Debugger path: C:\Windows\sy	ystem32\dllhost Browse
Enable compensating resource manage	gers
Enable 3GB support	
Leam more about <u>setting these properties</u>	ļ.
ОК	Cancel Apply

18. On the Security tab, disable Enforce access checks for this application and click OK.

SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer Properties				
Advanced Dump Realing & Pequeling	٦			
General Security Identity Activation Queuing				
Authorization	1			
Enforce access checks for this application				
Security Level				
Perform access checks only at the process level. Security property will not be included on the object context. COM+ security call context will not be available.				
Perform access checks at the process and component level. Security property will be included on the object context. The COM+ security call context is available.				
Software Restriction Policy				
Apply software restriction policy				
Restriction Level:				
Authentication Level for Calls:				
Packet 🔻				
Impersonation Level:				
Impersonate				
Learn more about setting these properties.				
OK Cancel Apply)			

- 19. Next, expand the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer and the Components nodes.
- 20. Under the **Components** node, verify that the **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1** component appears. If it does exist, you are finished with this procedure. If it does not exist, perform steps 21-25.
- 21. On the horizontal toolbar, click **Action > New > Component**. The **COM Component Installation Wizard** appears.
- 22. Click Next on the Welcome to the COM Component Install Wizard.
- 23. On the **Import or Install a Component** page, select **Install new component(s)** and browse for **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll**.

TIP The component **SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.dll** is located in [*Product Folder*]\RefData\Middle\Bin.

- 24. Click **Next** on the **Install new components** page, then click **Finish** to complete the installation procedure.
- 25. The Component Services window shows the SP3DRefDataMiddleTierService.RefdataMiddle.1 component installed in the SP3DPipingSpecRemoteAccessServer application.

See Also

Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID (on page 119)

Register the Site Database for P&ID Access

Before you complete the steps in this procedure, you must install the SP3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server service and configure the COM+ application. For more information, see *Install Smart 3D Client Software* (on page 109).

You must have administrator privileges on the computer in order to perform this installation procedure.

- 1. Click Start > Run, and then click Browse in the Run dialog box.
- 2. Navigate to [Product Folder]\RefData\Tools\Bin\SetSiteForPIDAccess.exe, and click OK.

Run	<u>? ×</u>
	Type the name of a program, folder, document, or Internet resource, and Windows will open it for you.
Open:	"D:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D\RefData\Tools\Bin 💌
	OK Cancel <u>B</u> rowse

- 3. Click OK in the Run dialog box.
- 4. In the **Set Site Database for Piping Spec Remote Access** dialog box, enter the SmartPlant 3D Site and Site schema database names and servers in the appropriate fields.

📅 Set Site Database For Piping Spec Remote Access 🛛 🔁			
Set the site database for Piping Spec Remo	te Access.		
Site database <u>s</u> erver:	Site database n <u>a</u> me:		
ED	DocModel_SiteDB		
Site schema ser <u>v</u> er: ED	Site schema name: DocModel_SiteDB_SCHEMA		

5. Click OK.

NOTES

 In order to use SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access you must perform additional installation and configuration on the computers running SmartPlant P&ID. See the Installing SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client section in the *SmartPlant P&ID Installation and Upgrade Guide* for more information about installing the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client. Also, see the Piping Specification Utility section in the *SmartPlant P&ID Utilities Guide* for additional configuration information.

 The "server" used by the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Client and the SP3D P&ID Client Tester application is the computer on which the SmartPlant 3D Piping Specification Remote Access Server COM+ application has been installed and configured. This server can be different from the database server on which the Site database server and Site schema server reside.

See Also

Integrating with SmartPlant P&ID (on page 119)

Integrating with SmartPlant Reference Data

If you plan to integrate with SmartPlant Reference Data (SPRD), you will need to install the SmartPlant Reference Data Client. SmartPlant Reference Data (SPRD) is licensed separately from SmartPlant 3D and is delivered on separate media.

Less than a megabyte of hard disk space is required to load the SmartPlant Reference Data Client software.

- 1. Insert the **SmartPlant Reference Data** delivery media. If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Browser.exe** in the root folder.
- 2. Click SmartPlant Reference Data (.NET) Installation on the SmartPlant Enterprise Materials page.
- 3. Click SmartPlant Reference Data (.NET) Client Installation on the SmartPlant Enterprise Reference Data page.

SmartPlant Reference Data Client installs.

- 4. After the installation is complete, you must enter your login credentials for SmartPlant Reference Data Client.
- 5. You can either use an existing login from the **Current Logins** tab, or you can create a new login from the **New Login** tab.

For more information, see the *SmartPlant Reference Data Installation Guide (.NET)* available on the **SmartPlant Enterprise Reference Data** installation page.

Viewing 3D Model Data

You can output 3D model data as SmartPlant Review files or CAD (SAT) files through the Drawings and Reports task. In order to use this functionality, you must install the SmartPlant Schema Component on the local workstation computer. For more information on installing this component, see *Install SmartPlant Schema Component* (on page 136).

For more information on creating 3D model data, see the *Orthographic Drawings User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides** in the software.

See Also

Install SmartPlant Schema Component (on page 136)

Install SmartPlant Schema Component

The SmartPlant Schema Component allows you to save your 3D model data as a graphics file in VUE format (*.vue*) in the Drawings and Reports task so that it can be viewed using SmartPlant Review. For more information on creating 3D model data output, see the *Orthographic Drawings User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

IMPORTANT Before you install the SmartPlant Schema Component, you must use log on to the workstation computer with a user account that has administrator privileges.

1. Insert the Intergraph SmartPlant 3D Product CD.

TIP If the CD does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the CD.

- 2. Select Prerequisite Software.
- 3. Select SmartPlant Schema Component Installation.
- 4. Click Next on the Welcome to SmartPlant Schema Component Setup page.
- 5. Click Next on the Select Optional Features page.
- 6. On the Select Program Folder page, click Next to begin installing the schema component.
- 7. Click **Finish** when installation completes.

See Also

Viewing 3D Model Data (on page 135)

Using Programming Resources

The Programming Resources component provides developers with the tools necessary to customize the software by creating custom commands or custom programs. Before attempting to create commands or programs, you should be very familiar with SmartPlant 3D interactively and understand its basic concepts of Projects, engineering, architecture, concurrency, and datastores, including the following:

- Microsoft Visual Basic (6.0 or later) at an advanced level, developing client and server systems and interfaces, and using Automation (C++ is not a requirement). Although any COM-compliant development platform can be used to interact with the software, Visual Basic is the preferred language because of its simplicity.
- Unified Modeling Language[®] (UML)[®]. UML is a popular method used to represent object-oriented data models. A brief overview of UML describes its relationship to the SmartPlant 3D data model.
- Basic understanding of SmartPlant 3D functionality. If you want to develop a command that
 performs placement of a vessel, you need to understand how to place the vessel
 interactively by using the software.
- Architecture. SmartPlant 3D software has an architecture that is component-oriented and built on three tiers.
- Basic understanding of relational databases. Making the software task-oriented, SmartPlant 3D uses one datastore.
- Engineering and project knowledge.

The default installation of the Programming Resources component includes online documentation, sample code, and installation wizards that add tools to Visual Basic menus to help make commands. The following features are available with the Programming Resources component:

• **Command Wizard** - Provides tools and methods for a new Visual Basic project and build a basic command based on those selected requirements.

IMPORTANT For more specific information about creating commands using the SmartPlant 3D application programming interface (API), contact *Intergraph Support* (*http://www.intergraph.com/support*).

- Symbol Wizard Creates and customizes three-dimensional symbols that fit your company
 or project. The wizard produces a Visual Basic project for building the symbol ports and
 graphics, and generates an Excel workbook for bulk loading the symbol data into the
 Catalog database. Included with the Symbol Wizard, is a Visual Basic add-in called the
 Equipment Symbol Upgrade Wizard. This wizard allows you to upgrade SmartPlant 3D
 version 5.0 Equipment symbols to Smart Occurrence-based equipment symbols.
- References Helper Locates and references type libraries quickly and easily. The ability to
 reference a type library with this tool saves valuable time otherwise required when searching
 via Project > References in your Visual Basic project.
- **Programming Help** Installs the Programming Help online documentation on the local computer.
- Example Code Provides source code necessary for creating custom Visual Basic commands for SmartPlant 3D.
- Debug Code for Task Host Runs your SmartPlant 3D Visual Basic project in debug mode.
- .NET Programming Installs .NET programming help and examples.

NOTE In order to register and display the .NET documentation delivered with **.NET Programming**, you must have the Microsoft Document Explorer installed. This module is automatically installed when you install any version of Visual Studio.

• **3D Schema Browser** - Displays the metadata and the relationships in the software.

For information about installing the Programming Resources component, see *Install Programming Resources* (on page 137).

See Also

Install the SmartPlant 3D Command Wizard (on page 139) Install the SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard (on page 139)

Install Programming Resources

Before installing the Programming Resources component, verify that the SmartPlant 3D software is installed on the workstation computer. For specific installation guidelines, see *Install Smart 3D Client Software* (on page 109).

Approximately 270 MB of hard disk space is required to perform a complete installation of the Programming Resources component. Before proceeding, verify that enough disk space is available on the workstation computer.

Several of the tools delivered with the Programming Resources component operate within the Visual Basic environment as an add-in; consequently, Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0 with Visual Studio Service Pack 5 is required to execute these tools.

1. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the installation does not start automatically, double-click **setup.exe** in the main DVD folder.

- 2. Select Smart 3D Programming Resources Installation.
- 3. On the Welcome to the Intergraph Smart 3D Programming Resources Installation Wizard page, click Next.

- 4. On the **User Information** page, enter text in the **Full Name** and **Organization** boxes, and then click **Next**.
- 5. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list and click **Display** to view the license agreement.

IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have Acrobat Reader installed on the workstation computer to view the license agreement. If the software detects that Acrobat Reader is not installed, a message box appears. To install Acrobat Reader, visit the Adobe web site, www.adobe.com.

- 6. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document and click **Yes** on the **Software License Agreement** page to accept the terms.
- 7. On the Select Features page, select the features you want to install.

😸 Installation for Smart 3D Programming Re	sources
Select Features Please select which features you would like to	install.
Complete Complete Visual Studio 6.0 Program NET Programming JD Schema Browser	Feature Description: This feature will be installed on the local hard
< >	arive. This feature requires 1KB on your hard drive. It has 3 of 3 subfeatures selected. The subfeatures require 348MB on your hard drive.
Current location: C:\Program Files (x86)\SmartPlant\3D\	Browse
Wise Installation Wizard (R) Disk Cost Reset	< Back Next > Cancel

- 8. Click **Browse** and select the folder location for the selected features, and then click **OK**.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. On the Ready to Install the Application page, click Next.

11. When installation is complete, click **Finish**.

NOTES

- During installation of the Programming Resources component, the References Helper feature (if selected in step 7) is registered on the local computer and can be accessed via the Add-Ins > Add- In Manager command in the Visual Basic application.
- In order to register and display the .NET documentation delivered with .NET Programming, you must have the Microsoft Document Explorer installed. This module is automatically installed when you install any version of Visual Studio.
- If you select the 3D Schema Browser feature in step 7, the software delivers it to [*Product Folder*]:\SmartPlant\3D\Programming\Tools\Bin.
- The online documentation for Programming Resources can be accessed via Start > Programs > Intergraph SmartPlant 3D > Programming Help.

 For information about accessing the sample code, contact Intergraph Support (http://www.intergraph.com/support).

See Also

Using Programming Resources (on page 136)

Install the SmartPlant 3D Command Wizard

The SmartPlant 3D Command Wizard is available only as a feature with the Programming Resources component. For more information about Programming Resources, see *Using Programming Resources* (on page 136).

To install the wizard, you must have administrator privileges on the client computer.

- 1. On a workstation computer, double-click **SP3DCommandWizardV2.EXE** in the [*Product Folder*:\SmartPlant\3D\Programming\Tools\CommandWizard folder.
- 2. On the Welcome page, click Next.
- 3. On the **Destination Folder** page, click **Next** to install the SmartPlant 3D Command Wizard in the default installation folder.

TP Click **Browse** to navigate to another installation location and then click **OK**.

- 4. On the Ready to Install the Application page, click Next.
- 5. After the wizard has successfully installed, click **Finish**.

NOTE During installation, the software registers the Command Wizard on the client computer. The wizard can be accessed from the **Add-Ins** menu in the Visual Basic application.

See Also

Using Programming Resources (on page 136)

Install the SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard

The SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard is available only as a feature with the Programming Resources component. For more information about Programming Resources, see *Using Programming Resources* (on page 136).

To install the wizard, you must have administrator privileges on the client computer.

- 1. On a workstation computer, double-click **setup.exe** in the folder [*Product Folder*:\SmartPlant\3D\Programming\Tools\SymbolWizard.
- 2. On the SmartPlant 3D Part Definition Wizard Setup page, click OK.

3. If the default installation folder is acceptable, click the installation button. Otherwise, click **Change Directory**, browse to another installation folder, and click **OK**.

<mark>ط</mark> SmartPlant 3D Part Defini	tion Wizard Setup		×
Begin the installation by clickin	g the button below.		
Click this b the specifi	outton to install SmartPlant 3D Part (ied destination directory.	Definition Wizard software to	
Directory:	118R	Change Divertery	
C:\Program Files\SP3D Symbol	Wizard)		
			-
	E <u>x</u> it Setup		

- 4. Click **OK** after the wizard has successfully installed.
- NOTES
 - During installation, the software registers the wizard on the client computer. The wizard can be accessed from the Add-Ins menu in the Visual Basic application.
 - A Visual Basic add-in called the Equipment Symbol Upgrade Wizard is also delivered during installation of the SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard. The Equipment Symbol Upgrade Wizard allows you to upgrade SmartPlant 3D version 5.0 Equipment symbols to Smart Occurrence-based Equipment symbols. For more information about registering and launching the Equipment Symbol Upgrade Wizard, see the SmartPlant 3D/SmartMarine 3D Programmer's Guide available from Help > Printable Guides in the software.

See Also

Using Programming Resources (on page 136)

Configuring the Databases

You must have the server components from Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 installed on the server in order to create the databases. The server components are installed on the server by default when following the procedure outlined in *Install Microsoft SQL Server 2008* (on page 44).

IMPORTANT Administrative privileges are required for the following utilities to run correctly and for you to change the necessary items.

Understanding the Databases

SmartPlant 3D uses seven databases: Catalog, Catalog Schema, Model, Site, Site Schema, Reports, and Reports Schema. These databases must be created before running SmartPlant 3D.

The Catalog database contains reference data, which includes part dimensions and industry standards. The Catalog database contains the non-graphical information derived from the reference data (in the form of Excel workbooks) delivered with the software. You can modify the delivered reference data by editing and bulk loading Excel workbooks. You also can use your own custom Excel workbooks and custom symbols, to create a new Catalog database specifically for your project. For more information about customizing the delivered reference data, refer to the *SmartPlant 3D Reference Data Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides**.

You can create a starting Catalog database and schema using the database template file delivered with the software. The *CatalogDB.dat* file is a backup of an already complete Catalog database and contains the definition of a default catalog of objects, including specific sizes of pipes, pipe specifications, steel section sizes, and so forth. Once the Catalog database is created, you can then bulk load your customized piping specifications into the Catalog database as needed. For more information about creating the required Catalog database for SQL, see *Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for SQL* (on page 143). If you are using Oracle, see *Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for Oracle* (on page 147).

The Model database contains all instances of parts in the physical representation of the model. The Catalog and Model databases share the same schema. A Plant is all three databases used together: Catalog database, Catalog schema database, and Model database.

The Site database and schema are containers for the other databases. The Site database stores work-breakdown and user access for the model. A Site database can have multiple Model and Catalog databases. Typically, there is one Site database set for each customer location. For information about Site databases, see the *Project Management User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides**.

The Reports database and schema interact with the other five databases to generate tabular reports from SmartPlant 3D data. For information about reports, see the *Reports User's Guide* and *Drawings and Reports Reference Data Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides**.

The Catalog contains two hierarchies. The first is a Site database hierarchy made up of catalog permission group folders and permission groups. To view the Site database hierarchy for the Catalog, start the Project Management task. The second hierarchy is an object hierarchy made up of equipment, piping, and so forth. To view the hierarchy and its contents, start the Catalog task. For more information about the functionality in these tasks, refer to the Project Management Help and the Catalog Help files. These help files are delivered in *[Operating System drive where Product is installed]:\Program Files \Common Files \Common Files \Intergraph\SmartPlant\Help on the workstation computer.*

For creation date and size information on each database, you can open the SQL Server Enterprise Manager. This software also provides further technical details about the relational tables in each database.

The following illustration shows the relationships of the databases:



- (A) Reports Database
- (B) Site Database
- (C) Model Database
- (D) Catalog Database
- (E) Site Schema
- (F) Catalog Schema
- (G) Reports Schema

These databases are created on a central server using the **Database Wizard** on a workstation computer on which the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options are installed.

Using Linked Servers

If your Site/Catalog/Model database server is different from your Reports database server, you can use linked servers for communication between the data sources. However, if linked servers are not configured correctly, the login can fail when you run queries against the linked server.

For linked servers to work correctly, ensure that the following conditions exist:

• The database link is created on the Site/Catalog/Model database server, not the Reports database server.

- The linked database server supports Windows Authentication Mode.
- The user is connected to SQL Server using Windows Authentication Mode on both database servers.
- Security account delegation is available on the client and the sending server.

For more information about setting up linked servers, see the Microsoft SQL Server documentation.

See Also

Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for SQL (on page 143) *Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for Oracle* (on page 147) *Assign Access Permissions* (on page 152)

Upgrading Databases

If you need to upgrade the databases from a previous version to the current version, you must have the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options installed.

Upgrading your older databases to the latest installed version of the software involves several different upgrade tasks. For more information, see the *Project Management User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides** in the software.

NOTE It is only possible to upgrade a Plant configuration using the **same** database type. It is **not** possible to upgrade, for example, a Version 2009.1 configuration on a Microsoft SQL Server database to a Version 2011 configuration on an Oracle database.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for SQL

This procedure is for Microsoft SQL Server 2008 SP3 databases. Site and Catalog database creation requires that you install the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** components.

You must have the appropriate server components from Microsoft SQL Server installed on the server computer in order to create the databases. The user login used to create the databases must be part of the Administrators group on the local computer and the database server. Other users do not need to be part of the Administrators group on the local computer in order to run the product.

- 1. Open the Database Wizard.
- 2. Select Create a new site, and then click Next.
- 3. On the Create Site Database and Schema page, select MSSQL from the Database type list.
- 4. Next, select the name of the server in the **Site database server** list on which your Site database will reside.

IP Only registered SQL Servers appear in the **Site database server** list.

5. Enter the name of your Site database in the **Site database name** text box. Include the type of database in the name you type. For example, type **Model1SiteDB**.

TIP When you name the Site database, the Site schema server and Site schema name default to match the Site database server and name.

6. Enter the workshare location for the Site database in the **Site database workshare location** text box. You can use any string that represents your physical location.

NOTE This location is the location of the host Site database and is required even if the host is not going to be replicated for worksharing purposes. During generation of the Site database, the software creates a location object and associates it with the Site database.

7. Enter a name rule ID in the **Name rule ID** text box. By default, the software leaves this field blank. You can enter any string identifier, numeric or alpha.

NOTE The Name Generator Service that runs on the server computer you specify in the **Name generator server for site** box (step 8) supplies unique names to items placed in the Plant (Model database). In a replicated configuration, there are multiple servers and multiple instances of the Name Generator Service running at each location; consequently, there is no way to ensure unique and sequential naming of placed objects. The value entered in the **Name rule ID** text box functions as a substring (an internal ID number) that represents the location at which an item is placed into the replicated model.

8. Enter the name of the server computer on which the Name Generator Service is configured in the **Name generator server for site** box.

NOTE A name server must be a valid computer running on the Windows domain and one that has been properly configured to run as a name server.

- 9. Use the default paths for the site database files in the **Physical database** and **Log file** boxes.
- 10. Select the button to the right of the **Template file to be used to create site schema** text box and browse for the name of the template file (*AppRepos.dat*) *th*e software uses when creating your Site schema database. The location of the file is on the server computer in [*Product Folder*]**DatabaseTemplates**.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. On the **Catalog Database and Schema** page, select the name of the server in the **Catalog database server** list on which your Catalog database will reside.

TIPS

- The option control at the top of the page allows you either to create a new Catalog database by restoring a backup or to use an existing Catalog database. If you choose to create a new Catalog database using the **Restore** option, the wizard will restore the .DAT file specified in the **Template file to be used to create the Catalog database** and schema field. The software delivers one selection for this field, CatalogDB.dat. The default is to **Restore catalog from backup**. If you select **Use existing catalog**, then no further options are available.
- If you intend to create a custom catalog, select the Use existing catalog and use the Bulkload utility delivered with the product. Alternately, you can customize your catalog data using the Catalog task.
- 13. Enter the name of your catalog database in the **Catalog database name** box. This step also automatically populates the name of your Catalog schema database in the **Catalog schema name** text box.
- 14. Use the default paths for the catalog database files in the **Physical database** and **Log file** boxes.
15. Select the ellipsis button to the right of the **Symbol and custom program file folder** box, and browse for and select the SharedContent share on the SmartPlant 3D reference data computer.

NOTES

- The SharedContent share is created automatically on the reference data computer during the SmartPlant 3D Reference Data installation.
- The path in the Symbol and custom program file folder box must be a UNC path. To obtain a UNC path, click the ellipsis button and browse under My Network Places, not under My Computer.
- 16. Select the ellipsis button to the right of the **Template file to be used to create catalog database and schema** text box and browse for the name of the template file (*CatalogDB.dat*) you want the software to use when creating your Catalog and schema databases. The location of the file is on the database server computer in [*Reference Data Product Folder*]\DatabaseTemplates.

NOTE If you are installing the Materials Handling software, the path for the MHE catalog is [*ReferenceData*]\MaterialsHandling\DatabaseTemplates.

- 17. Click Next.
- 18. On the Ready to Create Databases page, click Create DB to create your databases.
- 19. When the Database Wizard displays the database names that you entered, click Finish.

NOTE You must name the databases with unique entries.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

Create the Model and Reports Databases for SQL

Model and Reports database creation requires that the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options be installed.

- 1. Open the Project Management task.
- 2. Click the Plant icon in the **Project Management** tree view, and then click **Database > New** > **Plant**.
- 3. On the **General** tab of the **New Plant** dialog box, select the **Value** cell in the **Name** row, and enter a model name, such as **Model1**.

Property	Value
Name	Model1
Description	Model Number 1
Site	Huntsville
Owner	XYZ Group

- 4. In the Value cell in the Description row, enter a description, such as Model Number 1.
- 5. In the Value cell in the Site row, enter a site description, such as Huntsville.
- 6. In the Value cell in the Owner row, enter an owner description, such as XYZ Group.

7. On the **Databases** tab, click in the cell under **Type**, and select **Catalog** in the list.

Gene	eral Database	s			
Plar	nt databases:				
	Type Server Name				
	Catalog	ED	DocModel_CatalogDB		
	Model	ED	Model1_MODEL		
1	Reports	ED	Model1_REPORT		
Nar	ne generator se	erver for plant:			
srv	/				
Loc	ations for the m	odel database files			
P <u>h</u> y	sical database:				
De	fault SQL Local	ion			
Log file:					
Default SQL Location					
			OK Cancel		

- 8. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Catalog database, and select **MSSQL** from the list.
- 9. Click in the **Server** cell for the Catalog database, and select the server on which the Catalog database resides.
- 10. Click in the **Name** cell for the Catalog database, and select the Catalog database name that you created earlier.
- 11. In the second row, click the cell in the **Type** column, and select **Model** in the list. The software automatically populates the **Name** field with the name of the new Model database.
- 12. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Model database, and select **MSSQL** from the list.
- 13. Click in the **Server** cell for the Model database, and select the server on which the Model database will reside.
- 14. In the third row, click the cell in the **Type** column, and select **Reports** in the list. The software automatically populates the **Name** field with the name of the new Reports database.
- 15. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Reports database, and select **MSSQL** from the list.
- 16. Click in the **Server** cell for the Reports database, and select the server on which the Reports database will reside.
- 17. In the **Name generator server for model** box, specify the server on which the Name Generator Service is installed.

MOTE A name server must be a valid computer running on the Windows domain and one that has been properly configured to run as a name server. For more information about installing and configuring the Name Generator service, see the *Installing the Name Generator Service* (on page 71).

- 18. Specify the path for location of the model database files in the **Physical database** and **Log file** boxes.
- Click OK on the New Plant dialog box. Wait for the process to complete. Icons for the new Plant and its associated Catalog database appear in the tree view of the Project Management task.

IMPORTANT Reports databases do not appear in the tree view of the Plant hierarchy. Reports database information can only be accessed via the **Database** tab of the **Plant** **Properties** dialog box. Right-click a Plant and select **Properties** on the short-cut menu to display the **Plant Properties** dialog box.

NOTES

- The Reports and Reports schema database are created automatically during the Plant generation process.
- After creating the Plant, you can open the software on a workstation computer and begin designing the Plant.
- During the Plant (Model database) creation process, you can specify the location for the physical database files when the Plant is created.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

Create the Site, Catalog, and Schema Databases for Oracle

This procedure is for Oracle databases. Site and Catalog database creation requires that you install the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** components. You must have the appropriate server components from Oracle server software installed on the server computer in order to create the databases.

NOTE The dump files used to create the Site and Catalog database are delivered on the server computer to [*Product Folder*]\DatabaseTemplates. This location must be shared and write permissions given to both the user login used to create the SmartPlant 3D databases and the account on which the Oracle service (OracleService<*SID*>) is running. For example, NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM. Before proceeding, verify that the share (with the appropriate permissions) exists on the server computer.

- 1. Open the Database Wizard.
- 2. Select Create a new site, and then click Next.
- 3. On the **Create Site Database and Schema** page, select **Oracle** from the **Database type** list.
- 4. In the **Oracle service** list, select the name of the Oracle net service for the site database connection.
- 5. Enter the name of your Site database in the Site database name text box.

TIPS

- To better differentiate between one database and another, include the type of database in the name you type. For example, type Model1SiteDB.
- Do not use a name which starts with a digit as its first character. For example, if you enter a name such as 1ModelSiteDB, Oracle will not create the database.
- When you name the Site database, the Oracle service (for the Site schema) and Site schema name default to match the Oracle service for the Site database and the Site database name.
- 6. Enter the workshare location for the Site database in the **Site database workshare location** text box. You can use any string that represents your physical location.

NOTE This location is the location of the host Site database and is required even if the host is not going to be replicated for worksharing purposes. During generation of the Site database, the software creates a location object and associates it with the Site database.

7. Enter a name rule ID in the **Name rule ID** text box. By default, the software leaves this field blank. You can enter any string identifier, numeric or alpha; however, special characters are not supported.

NOTE The Name Generator Service that runs on the server computer supplies unique names to items placed in the Plant (Model database). In a replicated configuration, there are multiple servers and multiple instances of the Name Generator Service running at each location; consequently, there is no way to ensure unique and sequential naming of placed objects. The value entered in the **Name rule ID** text box functions as a substring (an internal ID number) that represents the location at which an item is placed into the replicated Plant.

8. In the **Name generator server for site** box, type the name of the server computer on which the Name Generator Service is installed.

NOTE A name server must be a valid server running on the Windows domain and one that has been properly configured to run as a name server.

- 9. Use the default paths for the site database files in the **Data tablespace file name** and **Index tablespace file name** boxes.
- 10. Click the **Browse** button to the right of the **Template file to be used to create site schema** text box to browse for the name of the dump file (*AppRepos.dmp*) the software uses when creating your Site schema database. The location of the file is on the reference data computer at \\[Server Name]\DatabaseTemplates\AppRepos.dmp.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. On the **Catalog Database and Schema** page, select the name of the Oracle net service for the Catalog database connection in the **Oracle service** list.

TIPS

- The option control at the top of the page allows you either to create a new Catalog database by restoring a backup or use an existing Catalog database. If you choose to create a new Catalog database using the **Restore** option, the wizard will restore the *.dmp* file specified in the **Template file to be used to create the Catalog database** and schema field. The software delivers one selection for this field, *CatalogDB.dmp*. The default is to **Restore catalog from backup**. If you select **Use existing catalog**, then no further options are available.
- If you intend to create a custom catalog, you must select the Use existing catalog option and use the Bulkload utility delivered with the product.
- 13. Enter the name of your catalog database in the **Catalog database name** box. This step also automatically populates the name of the Catalog schema database in the **Catalog schema name** text box.
- 14. Use the default paths for the catalog database files in the **Data tablespace file name** and **Index tablespace file name** boxes.
- 15. Click Browse to the right of the Symbol and custom program file folder box to browse for and select the SharedContent share on the SmartPlant 3D reference data computer.
 NOTES
 - The SharedContent share is created automatically on the reference data computer during the **SmartPlant 3D Reference Data** installation.
 - The path in the Symbol and custom program file folder box must be a UNC path. To obtain a UNC path, click Browse and browse under My Network Places, not under My Computer.
- 16. Click **Browse** to the right of the **Template file to be used to create catalog database and schema** text box to browse for the name of the dump file (*CatalogDB.dmp*) you want the software to use when creating your Catalog and schema databases. The location of the file is on the reference data computer at \\[*Server Name*]\DatabaseTemplates\CatalogDB.dmp.

- 17. Click Next.
- 18. On the **Ready to Create Databases** page, click **Create DB** to create your SmartPlant 3D databases.
- 19. When the Database Wizard displays the database names that you entered, click Finish.

NOTES

- The software delivers two log files one for the Site database generation process and one for the Catalog database restore process on the server computer at the local user %*temp*% folder.
- You must name the databases with unique entries.
- During the Site database creation process for an Oracle plant, the software attempts to connect to the Site database to create the user interface prior to generating the views, resulting in a "table or view does not exist" error being reported in the various log files. Since views are generated after the user interface is created, these errors cannot be avoided. Additionally, these errors do not have any negative impact on using the software and can be disregarded when reviewing the log files.
- Intergraph recommends that you increase and/or redefine initial tablespace values based on the expected scope of your project(s). For more information, see your Oracle documentation.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

Create the Model and Reports Databases for Oracle

Model and Reports database creation requires that the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options be installed.

- 1. Open the Project Management task.
- Click the Plants icon in the Project Management tree view, and then click Database > New > Plant.
- 3. On the **General** tab of the **New Plant** dialog box, select the **Value** cell in the **Name** row, and enter a model name, such as **Model1**.
- 4. In the Value cell in the Description row, enter a description, such as Model Number 1.
- 5. In the Value cell in the Site row, enter a site description, such as Huntsville.
- 6. In the Value cell in the Owner row, enter an owner description, such as Plant Owner 1.

Nev	v Plan	t		? ×
	Gen	eral Databases		
		Property	Value	
		Name	Model1	
		Description	Model Number 1	
		Site	Huntsville	
	I	Owner	Plant Owner 1	
			OK Cano	el

- 7. On the **Databases** tab, click in the cell under **Type**, and select **Catalog** in the list.
- 8. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Catalog database, and select **Oracle** from the list.
- 9. Click in the **Service** cell for the Catalog database, and select the Oracle net service for the Catalog database connection.
- 10. Click in the **Name** cell for the Catalog database, and select the Catalog database name that you created earlier.
- 11. In the second row, click the cell in the **Type** column, and select **Model** in the list. The software automatically populates the **Name** field with the name of the new Model database.
- 12. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Model database, and select **Oracle** from the list.
- 13. Click in the **Service** column for the Model database, and select Oracle net service for the Model database connection.
- 14. In the third row, click the cell in the **Type** column, and select **Reports** in the list. The software automatically populates the **Name** field with the name of the new Reports database.
- 15. Click in the **DB Provider** cell for the Reports database, and select **Oracle** from the list.
- 16. Click in the **Service** column for the Reports database, and select Oracle net service for the Reports database connection.

17. In the **Name generator server for model** box, specify the server on which the Name Generation Service is installed.

IMPORTANT A name server must be a valid computer running on the Windows domain and one that has been properly configured to run as a name server. For more information about installing and configuring the Name Generator service, see the *Installing the Name Generator Service* (on page 71).

New Plant				X	
General Da	itabases				
Plant databas	Plant databases:				
Туре	DB Provider	Service	Name		
Catalog	ORACLE	SP3DORA1	07023_CDB		
Model	ORACLE	SP3DORA1	Model1_MDB		
Reports	ORACLE	SP3DORA1	Model1_RDB		
Na <u>m</u> e genera	tor server for plani	-			
SP3DCert1b					
J					
Locations for	the model databa:	se files			
Data tables <u>p</u> a	ace file name:				
E:\ORACLE\PRODUCT\10.2.0\ORADATA\					
Index tables have file have:					
			UK	Cancel	

- 18. Specify the path for location of the model database files in the **Physical database** and **Index file** boxes.
- 19. Click **OK** on the **New Plant** dialog box. Wait for your computer to complete its processing. Icons for the new plant and its associated Catalog database appear in the tree view of the Project Management task.

NOTE Reports databases do not appear in the tree view of the Plant hierarchy. Reports database information can only be accessed via the **Database** tab of the **Plant Properties** dialog box. Right-click a plant and select **Properties** on the shortcut menu to display the **Plant Properties** dialog box.

NOTES

- The Reports and Reports schema database are created automatically during the plant generation process.
- After creating the plant, you can open the software on a workstation computer and begin designing the plant.
- During the plant (Model database) creation process, you can specify the location for the physical database files when the plant is created.

 Intergraph recommends that you increase and/or redefine initial tablespace values based on the expected scope of your project(s). For more information, see your Oracle documentation.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

Assign Access Permissions

Perform the following steps on the database server computer.

- 1. Open Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio and expand the list for your database server in the left tree view.
- 2. Expand the list under **Security** in the left tree view.
- 3. In the left pane, right-click Logins.
- 4. Select New Login from the shortcut menu.
- 5. On the **Login New** dialog box, enter the user account you want to be assigned administrative privileges in the **Login name** text box. For example, type **AdminUser1**.
- 6. Select Server Roles under the Select a page heading to display the Server Roles list.
- 7. In the Server Roles list, select the sysadmin and dbcreator check boxes.

NOTE Standard SmartPlant 3D users need dbcreator access. Administrators need both sysadmin and dbcreator access.

- 8. Select **User Mapping** under the **Select a page** heading to display the **Users mapped to this Login** list.
- Select the Map check box for one of the seven databases created previously, and then select db_owner and public as the database roles on the Database role membership for list.
- 10. Repeat the procedure for each of the remaining six databases.
- 11. Click OK.

NOTE You can repeat steps 2-11 for each additional user/group for whom you want to assign access permissions to the databases.

- 12. In the left tree view, select Logins to display the various logins you have created.
- 13. In the right list view, right click the SQL Server 2008 login you created in the *Configure SQL* Server 2008 Account for Name Generator Service (on page 47) procedure, and select **Properties**.
- 14. On the **Users mapped to this Login** list, select the **Map** check box for one of the seven databases created previously, and then select **db_owner** and **public** as the database roles in the **Database role membership for** list.
- 15. Repeat the procedure for each of the remaining six databases.
- 16. Click OK.

See Also

Configuring the Databases (on page 141)

SECTION 9

Server-Based Interference Checking (Database Detect)

Unlike the traditional file-based method of manually defining groups of parts to check against each other, **Check Interference** is a separate software process that runs directly on the Model database. Although the interference detection process can be run on any computer on which the **Database Interference Detection Service** has been installed, due to the intensive nature of the interference check computations, the recommendation is to have a computer dedicated to run as an interference server.

NOTE In order to monitor interferences, you must install the **Database Interference Detection Service** option on the same computer on which the **Project Management** option is installed.

Database detection options are set in the **Project Management** task. You also start and stop the interference detection service in the **Project Management** task.

Interference detection requires disk space for the file cache that temporarily stores the interference data. Before starting the interference process, the interference server checks to see if enough space exists in the TMP location for the file cache. The server also checks to see if you have the proper permissions to write, read, and delete files in the TMP location. During the process, if the space becomes too low, the software stops IFC and displays an error message. These checks primarily apply to the server-based interference process, although they can apply to the local checking process if extremely low or no disk space is available for the temporary folder on the local computer.

IMPORTANT Configure automatic disk defragmentation in order to free space for the file cache.

After you start the process, you can use the **Status** tab on the **Interference Server Settings** dialog box to monitor the start time, progress of the interference checking, time when the last part was modified, and the status of the checking. A box at the top of the dialog box identifies the model that you are checking.

The software automatically checks new or modified objects apart from existing objects. When you create or modify an object, the software checks for interference against all objects in the Model database. The interferences generated by this process are persistent; that is, the interferences are stored in the database like any other objects in the software. You can also modify these objects by changing the properties. Interferences are also assigned to a permission group; thereby the entire process is under the control and restrictions of an administrator.

You can interrupt the automatic interference checking process during a work session without forcing a recheck of all parts in the database when the process is brought back online. When you restart the interference check process, the software begins checking where it left off when the process went offline. However, if you change any of the options on the **Interference Server Settings** dialog box for Database Detect, all pre-existing interference checking processes are cleared from the database, and checking starts again from the beginning.

The server-based interference checking runs continuously; therefore, you can perform an interference check at any time and view the interferences of interest that result from the background check by refreshing the workspace. After you have reviewed the interferences, you can remove an interference automatically from the database by editing the objects so that the interference no longer exists. You can then see the results of your edit by refreshing the

workspace. Because certain types of interferences are allowable, you also have the capability to mark such interferences as acceptable.

Be aware that there is a four minute interval between the time you make your edits and the time that the database detect service rechecks the objects. After the database detect process reaches 100%, the software will issue a query only every two minutes to locate newly modified objects. Therefore, it is possible that there will be a six minute delay before a modified object is processed.

When the Database Detect process reaches 100%, it does not mean that all clashes between SmartPlant 3D and other foreign objects, such as PDS, referenced MicroStation objects, 3D AutoCAD files, or referenced point cloud objects, have been processed. Here, 100% indicates that all SmartPlant 3D objects have been processed against each other.

NOTES

You must stop the Database Detect process before starting a backup of the databases.

What do you want to do?

- Install Database Interference Detection Service (on page 154)
- Configure Interference Service Properties (on page 155)
- Start the Database Interference Detection Service (on page 156)
- Set IFC Permission Requirements (on page 156)
- Create IFC Permission Group Folder and Permission Group (on page 157)
- Set IFC Permissions (on page 158)
- Check Database Interferences (on page 159)

Install Database Interference Detection Service

Prior to installing the Database Interference Detection Service on a computer, verify that **all** prerequisite software has been installed. If you have an older version of the Database Interference Detection Service installed on your computer, remove it before loading the new software.

You must have administrator privileges on the computer to install the software.

1. Insert the Intergraph Smart 3D Product DVD.

TIP If the setup does not start automatically, double-click **Setup.exe** in the root folder of the DVD.

- 2. Select Smart 3D Installation.
- 3. Click Next on the Welcome to the Smart 3D Installation Wizard page.
- 4. On the **User Information** page, enter information in the **Full Name** and **Organization** boxes.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. On the **Software License Agreement** page, select your country from the list, and click **Display** to view the license agreement.

IMPORTANT The license agreement is delivered as a PDF file; consequently, you must have Acrobat Reader installed on the computer in order to view the license agreement. If the software detects that Acrobat Reader is not installed, a message box appears.

7. Carefully read the license agreement. Close the PDF document, and click **Yes** on the **Software License Agreement** page to accept the terms.

8. On the **Select Features** page, click **Browse** and select the folder location for the software, and click **OK**.

IMPORTANT If you install the Database Interference Detection Service on a computer on which the Smart 3D Reference Data software is also installed, they must be installed in two separate folders.

- On the Select Features page, in addition to the default options that are to be delivered, set the following options to Will be installed on local hard drive: Project Management, SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity, and Database Interference Detection Service.
- 10. Click Next.
- 11. Click Next on the Custom Documentation page.
- 12. Click **Next** on the **Start Copying Files** page to begin installing the software.
- 13. Click Finish to exit the installation sequence.
- 14. Restart the computer to complete the installation.

NOTES

- During the setup, the %temp% value is defined as the user %temp% of the person who runs the setup. In Windows, each user's C:\Documents and Settings\username\Local Settings\Temp is protected from other Windows users. Consequently, you must set the system environment variable TEMP value to a folder location where everyone has write access (e.g. C:\Temp). For more information about editing system variables, see the Windows on-line documentation (click Start > Help from the Windows task bar).
- If you plan to check interferences with a referenced PDS[®] project, you must install and configure the PDS Data Access component (with all prerequisites) on the IFC database detection server. For more information, see the *SmartPlant 3D Plant Design System (PDS) Guide*.

See Also

Server-Based Interference Checking (Database Detect) (on page 153)

Configure Interference Service Properties

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Intergraph SmartPlant 3D > Database Tools > Configure Interference Service.
- 2. In the **Configure Interference Service** dialog box, select the Site and Site schema databases connection information on which the Interference service will run.
- 3. Click OK.

Start the Database Interference Detection Service

Prior to starting the Database Interference Detection Service, you must configure its properties. For more information, see *Configure Interference Service Properties* (on page 155).

- 1. Log on with Administrative privileges to the computer where you have installed the **Project Management** task and **Database Interference Detection Service** option.
- 2. Open the Control Panel and double-click Administrative Tools.
- 3. In the **Administrative Tools** window, double-click **Services**.
- 4. Right-click the **SmartPlant 3D Interference Detection Service**, and select **Properties** from the shortcut menu.
- 5. On the **Log On** tab, enable the **This account** option, and then type the user name that has Administrative privileges.

NOTE This version of the software does not support the **Local System account** option.

- 6. In the **Password** and **Confirm password** boxes, enter the password for the user account.
- 7. On the **Recovery** tab, set the options as required.
- 8. On the General tab, verify that the Startup type is set to Automatic.
- 9. In the Service status section, click Start.

10. Click OK.

NOTES

- If clashes between the Point Cloud and the SmartPlant 3D objects are selected to check for interferences, then the SmartPlant 3D Interference Detection Service should be started from the command prompt. From the command prompt, navigate to install\Foul Check\Middle\bin, and then type IFCNtSvc.exe /Auto/0 and press Enter.
- Errors that are encountered during startup of the Database Interference Detection service are logged to the Event Viewer Application Log with the source name IfcNtSvc.

Set IFC Permission Requirements

You must install the **Database Interference Detection Service** option in order to monitor interferences. For more information about installing and configuring this service, see the *SmartPlant 3D Installation Guide ava*ilable from **Help > Printable Guides**.

IMPORTANT The user account running the IFC Windows service must have at least Read access to the SharedContent folder. Otherwise, IFC generates a bad part marker with clashes against structural fireproofing.

An Interference Detection Service icon is placed under the Plant node in the Project Management tree. After the proper access permissions are configured, you can start and stop the Database Detect process from any computer on which the **Project Management** task is installed.

The SmartPlant 3D database hierarchy is comprised of a Plant that consists of the Model and Catalog databases. For the IFC Database Detection process to run correctly, permissions must be set on the Plant and Plant permission groups according to the following guidelines:

Log on privileges for the IFC Administrator include:

- Read access on the Plant (Model database) at a minimum
- Full Control permissions or access on a minimum of one permission group

TIP In the **Project Management** task, create a new permission group folder and permission group under the Plant icon to store the IFC results. For example, type **IFC**

Permission Group Folder and **IFC Permission Group** in the **New Permission Group Folder** and **New Permission Group** dialog boxes, respectively. For more information, refer to *Create IFC Permission Group Folder and Permission Group* (on page 157).

• Read access on all other Plant (Model database) permission groups at a minimum.

Create IFC Permission Group Folder and Permission Group

- 1. Log on with administrative privileges to the computer where you have installed the **Project Management** task and **Database Interference Detection Service** option.
- 2. In the Project Management tree view, navigate to the Plants icon on the tree view.
- 3. Expand the Plants folder.
- 4. Right-click on a Plant under the Plants folder.
- 5. On the shortcut menu, select **New Permission Group Folder**.
- 6. Type IFC Permission Group Folder for the name of the new permission group folder.
- 7. Click OK to close the New Permission Group Folder dialog box.
- 8. In the tree view, navigate to the IFC Permission Group Folder icon on the tree view.
- 9. Right-click IFC Permission Group Folder.
- 10. On the shortcut menu, select New Permission Group.
- 11. Type IFC Permission Group for the name of the new permission group.
- 12. Click **OK** to close the **New Permission Group** dialog box.

NOTE After the IFC permission group is created, you must assign the proper access permissions. For more information, see *Set IFC Permissions* (on page 158).

Set IFC Permissions

- 1. Log on with administrative privileges to the computer where you have installed the **Project Management** task and **Database Interference Detection Service** option.
- 2. In the Project Management tree, navigate to the **IFC Permission Group** icon on the tree view.



- 3. Right-click IFC Permission Group.
- 4. Select Permissions.
- 5. On the Access Permissions dialog box click Add.
- 6. In the **Add names** grid, double- click in the **User** cell, type the domain and name of the user or group that you want to add.

TIPS

- You can also click Add and search for users using the Select Users and Groups dialog box. This is a common Windows dialog box. For information regarding the options in this dialog box, see your Windows documentation.
- To remove a user or group from the Add names grid, select the appropriate row and click Remove.

In the **Type of access** list, select the type of access you want to assign. The software automatically updates the associated row in the **Add names** grid.

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click OK again to close the Access Permissions dialog box.

Check Database Interferences

Before performing the following procedure, you must first manually configure the Interference Detection Service on the computer where the service is installed.

- 1. In the Project Management tree, right-click the **Interference Server** icon *#* under the Plant for which you want to start Database Detect. Then select **Properties** on the shortcut menu.
- 2. In the **Interference Server Settings** dialog box, assign interference checking priorities to aspects.

TIP Maintenance, for example, is a typical aspect listed in the **Aspect** column. If a check of this aspect is important, you can indicate the priority as **Required**. If **Maintenance** is low priority or not important, you can indicate the priority as **Optional** or **Not Checked**.

- 3. Specify the interference comparison criteria:
 - **Required Required** Defines interferences classified as hard/hard. For example, one pipe physically intersects with another pipe.
 - **Required Optional** Defines interferences that are not as severe and are classified as hard/soft. For example, one pipe overlaps the optional aspect of the other object.
 - Optional Optional Defines interferences that are not severe and are classified as soft/soft. For example, the maintenance aspect of one piece of equipment overlaps the maintenance aspect of another.
 - SmartPlant 3D Foreign Interferences Considers objects outside the active model for interferences. For Local Detect, this option is enabled by default. For Database Detect, this box must be checked if you want referenced 3D models, referenced PDS objects, referenced MicroStation objects, and 3D AutoCAD files to be considered. This option only checks objects against foreign objects. It does not check for interferences between two foreign objects.
 - SmartPlant 3D Point Cloud Considers SmartPlant 3D objects and point cloud objects for interferences. For Database detect, this option must be selected to consider SmartPlant 3D objects and point cloud objects. For Local detect, select the SmartPlant 3D Point Cloud check box to consider local interferences. The point cloud must have a valid connection to the model with no unresolved vendor licensing issues for this check box to be available.
- 4. In the Include clearance list, select the desired clearance rule.
- 5. From the **Assign results to permission group** box, choose the permission group to which all the detected interferences are assigned.
- 6. In the **Marker size** field, type the value for the size of the interference symbols that will be generated in the model.

TIP Choose a marker size that is clearly readable, but one that does not interfere with the smaller details in the workspace view.

7. Click **Start** on the **Database Detect** tab. After you click **Start**, the **Status** tab on the **Interference Server Settings** dialog box displays the progress of the processing for parts that existed previously and for new or changed parts during the run.

IMPORTANT If the IFC Server detects that your system resources are too low (due to a significant process requiring the majority of system memory), then the IFC process will stop and display a message box notifying you that the service has stopped for this reason.

To start the server interference detection process, you must have at least Read access to all
objects in the model and Write access to the model itself. Access privileges are assigned for

each permission group in the **Project Management** task. During the IFC process, if the software denies access to an object, the server process stops and a message appears.

- To view the status of the database interference detection process, right-click the Interference Server icon in the Project Management tree, and click Properties. On the Interference Server Settings dialog box, click the Status tab.
- When the database interference check process is running, only the Stop command is available. When the process is not running, the Start command and all process property gadgets are available. The Stop command is not available.
- When the database interference check is running and you add any permission group without Read permissions for the server, the server automatically receives Read permissions and finds collisions with the placed objects in that permission group.
- When you modify permission groups in Project Management, the host for the existing, running task does not receive the changes. To update the information, you must exit and restart the interference detection process.

See Also

Interference Server Settings Dialog Box (on page 160)

Interference Server Settings Dialog Box

Provides options to change or accept the default properties for the interference marker size and the status of those interferences. Also, you can assign interference checking priorities to aspects and indicate whether the interferences are optional or required. Optionally, you can indicate if you want interference checking to include a clearance rule. You can activate this dialog box in the Project Management task by right-clicking on the Interference Server node under the Model database, and then selecting **Properties**.

Remember, if you change any of the options on this dialog box for Database Detect, all pre-existing interference checking processes are cleared from the database, and checking begins from scratch.

IMPORTANT The Interference Server Settings dialog box is only available on computers on which the **Project Management** and **Database Interference Detection Service** options are installed.

See Also

Database Detect Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box) (on page 160) Status Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box) (on page 162)

Database Detect Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box)

Provides options for assigning interference checking priorities to aspects, specifying the comparison methods, and optionally including a clearance rule. You can also assign the interference results to a selected permission group.

All properties on this tab when viewed outside the Project Management task are read-only.

NOTE You must run the **Database Detect** option before running the delivered Interference report. The Interference report is not intended to run on local interferences.

Check Plant - Specifies the name of the model that the server process needs to check. The server software must have the Site database locations predefined. This option is not available if you are in the Project Management task.

On server - Specifies the name of the server on which the interference checking is completed for the identified model.

Assign interference checking priority to aspects - Provides a two-column table listing the object aspects in one column and the type of comparison to check against that object in the other column.

- Aspect Lists all the object aspects identified for use in the model. This list includes the system-defined aspects and the user- defined aspects. Select those aspects in the Aspect column that apply to your objects, and then specify the type of comparison in the Type column. The delivered aspects include Simple physical, Detailed physical, Insulation, Operation, Maintenance, and Reference Geometry. The Diagnostic Interference Checking report lists these aspects settings in its header.
- Type Lists the types of checking you can apply to the selected aspect: Required, Optional, and Not checked. Choose the appropriate type for each aspect you select in the Aspect column. Not checked means the software does not use the selected aspect for interference checking.

Compare - Provides the following check box options for specifying which aspect types are to be compared against each other to find interferences.

- Required Required Defines interferences classified as hard/hard. For example, one pipe physically intersects another pipe.
- Required Optional Defines interferences that are not as severe and are classified as hard/soft. For example, one pipe overlaps the optional aspect of the other object but does not actually intersect the other object.
- **Optional Optional** Defines interferences that are not severe and are classified as soft/soft. For example, the maintenance aspect of one piece of equipment overlaps the maintenance aspect of another.
- SmartPlant 3D Foreign Interferences Considers referenced 3D models, referenced PDS objects, referenced MicroStation objects, and 3D AutoCAD files for interferences. This option is enabled after you have selected a Plant at the top of this tab. For PDS objects, the selected Plant has to have an attached PDS project. For Database Detect, this box must be checked if you want PDS objects considered. In the case of Local Detect, the software by default considers referenced 3D models, PDS objects, MicroStation objects, and 3D AutoCAD files that are in the workspace.

NOTE This option only checks active model objects against foreign objects. It does not check for interferences between two foreign objects (PDS to 3D AutoCAD for example).

 SmartPlant 3D - Point Cloud - Considers an attached point cloud during interference checking. The Point Cloud check box must be selected to consider SmartPlant 3D objects and the point cloud. The point cloud must have a valid connection to the model with no unresolved vendor licensing issues for the Point Cloud check box to be available.

Include clearance rule - Specifies the clearance rule to add to the **Required** type of interference check.

Assign results to permission group - Specifies the permission group to which all the detected interferences are assigned. The list displays only those permission groups to which the server containing the interference checking software has Write access.

Marker size - Specifies the size of the interference graphic marker. Choose a size that is clearly readable, but one that does not interfere with the smaller details in the workspace view.

Check all objects in database - Provides buttons to start and stop the interference checking process.

Start - Begins the process. This option is only available in the Project Management task.

Stop - Halts the process. This option is only available in the Project Management task.

Status Tab (Interference Server Settings Dialog Box)

Displays the status of the Database Detect process on the server. The status information includes the percentage of checking that has been completed, the amount remaining, when the process was started, and the estimated completion time.

The information on this tab is read-only.

Plant - Displays the name of the model that is checked.

New and modified parts since process start - Displays the following time information for any new and modified parts since the process was started.

Last part modified - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the last part was created or modified in the Model database.

Current range to - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the last part modified was in consideration for interference checking.

From - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the interference check completed checking the last part modified.

Elapsed time - Displays the amount of time (hour, min, sec) during which the interference checking has been running for the new or changed parts.

Estimated completion - Displays the amount of time (hour, min, sec) estimated until the interference checking process completes. Then displays **Completed** when the process is complete.

Process start - Displays the time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) the process started.

Existing parts at process start - Displays the following time information for existing parts when the process was started.

Current range to - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the interference checking started for the existing parts.

From - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the interference checking ended for the existing parts.

First part created - Displays the date and time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm:ss) at which the first part was created in the database.

Elapsed time - Displays the amount of time (hour, min, sec) during which the interference checking has been running for the existing parts.

Estimated completion - Displays the amount of time (hour, min, sec) estimated until the interference checking process completes. Then displays **Completed** when the process is complete.

Status message - Displays textual information about the current status of the process on the server.

SECTION 10 Batch Service

SmartPlant 3D uses the Intergraph Batch Services application to help you run large, time-consuming operations on a separate computer or during off hours, leaving your workstations available for other tasks. Due to the intensive nature of batch operations, using one or more computers dedicated as batch computers is recommended.

You can install both batch processing methods on any computer on which the SmartPlant 3D Workstation software has been installed. You must also install the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** features on your batch computers.

The Intergraph Batch Services application (Version 6.1.0.3 or later) is used to run batch processing for Project Management, Drawings, and Structure tasks such as running database integrity checks or updating documents. Intergraph Batch Services is delivered on separate media than SmartPlant 3D.

NOTE Intergraph Batch Services does not require a serial number.

Installing Intergraph Batch Services

- Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services and determine the current status of the TCP/IP NetBIOS Helper service on your computer. Start that service if it is not already running.
- 2. Insert the Intergraph Batch Services CD into your computer's drive.
- 3. To start setup, do one of the following:
 - Press the Windows key + R to activate the **Run** dialog box. Type **drive:\setup**, where *drive* is the drive letter for the CD/DVD drive.
 - In Windows Explorer, select the CD/DVD drive; then double-click **setup.exe**.
- 4. Select Batch Services Installation.

5. Click Next on the Welcome page.



6. Type your name and organization name, and then click **Next**.

B Installation for Batch Services		×
Customer Information Please enter your information.		C
User Name: Russ Joens		
Organization: Intergraph Process, Power & Marine		
InstallShield	< Back Ne	ext > Cancel

7. On the License Agreement page, select your country from the list, and then click Display.

H Installation for Batch Services		
License Agreement Select the appropriate country, and then click Display to read the software license agreement that applies to you.		
A PDF reader must be installed to view and accept the software license agreement.		
Country: United States Display		
Do you accept all the terms of the preceding License Agreement? If you choose No, the setup will close. To install Batch Services, you must accept this agreement.		
InstallShield < Back Yes Cancel		

- 8. Read the license agreement, and then close the PDF file.
- 9. Click Yes to accept the license agreement.
- 10. To accept the default destination folder (\$WindowsDrive:\Win32App\Ingr\Batch), click **Next**. -OR-

Click **Change**, and specify a new installation folder.

IMPORTANT If you plan to use this installation of Intergraph Batch Services with Plant Design System (PDS), do not install Intergraph Batch Services to a folder path that contains spaces, such as c:\Program Files\Batch. While Intergraph Batch Services does support spaces in folder paths, PDS does not.

If the destination folder already contains a version of Intergraph Batch Services, a warning message displays. You can install the new version of the Batch Services over the currently installed version, or you can install the new version in another folder.

B Installation for Batch Services	×
Destination Folder Click Next to install to this folder, or click Change to install to a different folde	
Install Intergraph Batch Services to: C:\Win32App\INGR\BATCH\	Change
InstallShield < Back Next >	Cancel

11. Select whether you want jobs to have access to the desktop. If you allow jobs to have access to the desktop, an iconified and non-active window will appear on the screen when a job is runs. These windows will only appear when a user is logged on to the system.

NOTE Windows Vista, Windows 2008 Server, and Windows 7 do not allow jobs to have access to the desktop. Therefore, you will not see this dialog when installing Batch Services in these operating systems.

Batch Services
Interactive Desktop Jobs have access to the desktop
Batch Services needs to know whether jobs should have access to the desktop on this server. If jobs are allowed to have access to the desktop, a window that is iconified and non-active will appear on the screen while the job is running. These windows will only be seen when a user is logged in.
Do you want jobs to have access to the desktop?
InstallShield
< Back Next > Cancel

If your site is one where batch jobs might require some user input, you should select **Yes**. If your site is one where security is a major concern, you should select **No**; a logged-on user will be able to interact with running batch jobs, even if the job is running as a different user. You can change whether you want jobs to have access to the desktop later. See *Granting Jobs Access to the Desktop* (on page 168) for details. Jobs that try to access the desktop will not run unless the user running the job is a member of the Administrators group.

12. Setup asks if you want to run all jobs as the same user.

HInstallation for Batch Services	x			
Account Mapping Enter the user name and password below	5			
Batch Services needs to know the account name and password to use when running jobs. The process of figuring out which user to run a job as is called account mapping. Account mapping information is normally entered and modified using the Batch Manager program. At sites where security is not a major concern, all jobs can be run as the same user.				
Do you want to run all jobs as the same user? Yes No 				
Username MyComputer \guest				
Confirm Password				
InstallShield	cel			

If you select **Yes** to configure account mapping, define the username and username password under which jobs should run.

If you select **No**, setup warns you that you must configure account mapping before you can submit jobs. Use Batch Manager to configure account mapping after setup is complete.

13. Click Next, and then click Install.

Intergraph Batch Services is installed on your computer. This may take a few minutes.

- 14. Click Finish.
- 15. After setup completes, restart your computer.

Starting and Stopping Batch Services

When you install Intergraph Batch Services software, the batch server service is configured to start automatically each time you restart your computer. No further configuration is required. Intergraph recommends leaving the batch server service as configured. However, if you want to configure Intergraph Batch Services to be started manually instead of automatically, do the following:

- 1. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 2. In Services, right-click on Intergraph Batch Server, and select Properties.
- 3. Set Startup type to Manual, and then click OK.
- 4. Close the **Services** window.

NOTE Batch Services also delivers an Intergraph NQS Listener service that is configured to start automatically. If your site is not using Intergraph NQS, you can configure the NQS Listener service to be started manually. Repeat steps 1-3, selecting Intergraph NQS Listener from the Service list.

If you configure Batch Services to be started manually, you must start the batch server each time you restart your system, or each time you want to run Batch Services.

To start Batch Services manually:

- 1. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 2. In Services, select Intergraph Batch Server from the list, and then click Start.

To stop Batch Services:

- 1. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 2. In Services, select Intergraph Batch Server from the list, and then click Stop.

Granting Jobs Access to the Desktop

If required, batch jobs can have access to the desktop. If jobs are allowed to have access to the desktop, a window that is iconified and non-active displays on the screen while a job is running. These windows will only be seen when a user is logged in.

NOTE Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows 2008 Server do not allow jobs access to the desktop.

Granting jobs access to the desktop depends on your site's security requirements. If jobs are granted access to the desktop, a logged in user will be able to interact with batch jobs that are running, even if the batch job is running as a different user. If security is not a concern, sites where batch jobs may require some user input should configure Batch Services to allow jobs to have access to the desktop. Sites where security is a main concern should configure Batch Services software, you are given the option of whether or not jobs may have access to the desktop. After installation, if you want to change the way Batch Services is currently configured, do the following:

- 1. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 2. Right-click on Intergraph Batch Server in the list, and then click Properties.
- 3. Select the Log On tab.
- 4. The **Allow service to interact with desktop** checkbox determines whether or not jobs may access the desktop. If you want jobs to have access to the desktop, make sure the checkbox is selected. If you do not want jobs to access the desktop, make sure the checkbox is cleared.
- 5. Click **Apply** to reconfigure the startup parameters. *The Intergraph Batch Server service must be stopped and restarted for the change to take effect.*
- 6. Select the **General** tab.
- 7. Click Stop.
- 8. Click Start to restart Batch Services.
- 9. Click **OK** to close the properties window.
- 10. Exit the Services window.

Granting Batch Service Privileges

Before you begin using Intergraph Batch Services, you should use Intergraph Batch Manager to ensure that users on your system (and users on other systems if appropriate) are granted the proper privileges for access to Batch Services.

A user with manager privileges can use all the commands that affect batch server configuration and operation, including granting and removing privileges, and creating and deleting queues. A user with operator privileges can manage jobs, including those belonging to other users, and can start and stop batch server queues. Users or groups without privileges can only submit requests to queues to which they have been granted access; most users or user groups are non-privileged users.

On Windows 7 and Windows Vista with User Account Control turned off, the Administrators group on your system has manager privileges. From an account belonging to the Administrators group, you can add users and groups of users, on your system or other systems, to the manager and operator privilege lists.

- 1. Open Start > All Programs > Intergraph Batch Services > Intergraph Batch Manager.
- 2. Select your computer name in the tree view on the left.
- 3. Click Server > Properties.
- 4. Select the **Security** tab.

Users and groups, and their Batch Service privileges, display in the Managers and Operators list.

Server Properties: \\VMVISTARLJPDS	×
General Security	
Managers and Operators:	
BUILTIN\Administrators Manager	
Add Remove Remove All	
OK Cancel Apply He	lp

Figure 1: Server Properties Dialog: Security Page

- 5. Click **Add**, and then type the username of a user into the **Add Names** box, or the group name of a group, to which you want to grant privileges.
- Specify local users and groups (on your computer) by username or group name only. Use one of the following formats when keying in a username or group name: *domain_name\username* or system_name\username

domain_name\group_name or system_name\group_name

Separate multiple users or groups with a semicolon (;).

- 7. Select the type of privilege you want to grant the user or group (Manager or Operator).
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Repeat steps 5 through 8 for each user or group to which you want to grant privileges.
- 10. When you have finished assigning privileges to users or groups, click **OK** on the **Server Properties** dialog box.

To remove privileges from a user or group:

- 1. Open Start > All Programs > Intergraph Batch Services > Intergraph Batch Manager.
- 2. Select your computer name in the tree view on the left.
- 3. Click Server > Properties.
- 4. Select the **Security** tab.

The current users and groups with Batch Service privileges are displayed in the Managers and Operators list.

- 5. In the **Managers and Operators** list, select the user or group for which you want to remove privileges.
- 6. Click Remove.
- 7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 for each user or group from which you want to remove privileges.
- 8. When you have finished removing privileges from users and groups, click OK.

TIP To change a user's or group's privileges, first remove the current privileges from the user or group; then re-add the user or group to the privilege list with the new privilege.

Configure Account Mappings

Batch Services requires an account name and password to use when running jobs. The process of determining the account name to use is called account mapping. You can use Batch Manager to enter and modify account-mapping information for your system. An account mapping entry comprises two parts: the user information to match (the "from" user), and whom that user maps to (the "to" user). Account mapping entries allow users submitting a job to assume the environment and permissions of the user to whom they are mapped.

To perform account mapping, the batch server tries to match the job owner with an account mapping entry, using the following order (items are listed on the account mapping dialog in the order in which they are applied):

- 1. The batch server first tries to find an exact match, matching the job owner's domain or computer name and username with the "from" user in the account mapping entries.
- 2. If the batch server cannot find an exact match, the batch server then searches the account mapping entries using the job owner's domain or computer name, with "*" (meaning any user) as the username.
- 3. If no match is found, the batch server then searches the account mapping entries using "*" (meaning any computer or domain) as the domain name, with the job owner's username.
- 4. Finally, if a match still has not been found, the batch server searches with "*" as the domain name and "*" as the username.

How you configure account mapping depends on the security needs and configuration of your site. For more information on configuring account mapping, see *Configure Account Mappings* in the *Installation Guide*.

Configure default account mappings:

- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Intergraph Batch Services > Intergraph Batch Manager.
- 2. Select the computer name in the tree view.
- 3. Select Server > Account Mapping.
- 4. Enter * for the Map From Account Domain/Host and the User.
- 5. In the **Map To Account Domain/Host** box, select the domain of the Windows user account you want to run jobs as.
- 6. In the Map To Account User box, type the user name to use.

IMPORTANT The map-to-account user must have access to the SmartPlant 3D site, catalog, and model databases because it is under this user name that the batch jobs will run. Give this user those access rights using SmartPlant 3D Project Management.

- 7. Click Add.
- 8. Enter and confirm the password for the "to account" user name.
- 9. Click OK.

NOTE The **ConfigureDrawingsBatch** utility must be run each time mapped account settings are changed. For more information, see *Configuring the Batch Services Server for Drawings Tasks* (on page 172).

Create Batch Services Queues

You must create the Intergraph Batch Services queues that SmartPlant 3D will use.

- 1. Open Windows Explorer on computer on which Intergraph Batch Services is installed.
- Navigate to and double-click c:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D\ProjectMgmt\Tools\bin\ConfigureSP3DBatchQueue.exe.

A message box appears informing you that the queues have been created and that you need to restart the Intergraph Batch Server service.

- 3. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 4. In Services, select Intergraph Batch Server from the list, and then click Stop.
- 5. With Intergraph Batch Server service still selected, click Start.
- 6. To verify that the batch queues were created, open Intergraph Batch Manager and select your server in the tree view.

NOTES

- If you install WinZip on the computer where you installed Intergraph Batch Services, the batch process automatically zips the log files in the temp folder after the batch job finishes.
- Intergraph Batch Services can optionally send the zipped or unzipped log files using email. You must define a SMTP host in Intergraph Batch Services. Refer to the Intergraph Batch Services documentation for more information on configuring email.

Making Other Batch Servers Available

You can make other computers running Intergraph Batch Services available for selection as the **Task server** by following these steps:

- 1. Edit <SharedContent>\Xml\SP3DBatchQueues.xml.
- 2. In the <SP3DBatchServers> section of the file, uncomment and add the computer names that you want to make available.

<SP3DBatchServers> <SP3DBatchServer ServerName="batchserver1" /> <SP3DBatchServer ServerName="batchserver2" /> </SP3DBatchServers>

- 3. Save and close the SP3DBatchQueues.xml file.
- Navigate to and run as an administrator [Product Folder]\ProjectMgmt\Tools\bin\ConfigureSP3DBatchQueue.exe. The default product folder is c:\Program Files\SmartPlant\3D.
- 5. In **Custom Batch Queues file location**, type the path to the <SharedContent>\Xml\SP3DBatchQueues.xml file that you edited in step 2.
- 6. Click OK.

A message box appears informing you that the queues have been created and that you need to restart the Intergraph Batch Server service.

- 7. Open Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services.
- 8. In Services, select Intergraph Batch Server from the list, and then click Stop.
- 9. With Intergraph Batch Server service still selected, click Start.

INOTE Additional task servers are only supported for Structural import and export batch jobs.

Configuring the Batch Services Server for Drawings Tasks

- 1. In the folder [SmartPlant 3D Installation folder]\Core\Container\Bin\Assemblies\Release, run **ConfigureDrawingsBatch.exe**.
- 2. Click **Yes**, and then click **OK**.

NOTES

- The printer name on the client computer must match the printer name on the batch server.
- Every mapped account must open Microsoft Excel once on every batch server.
- Microsoft Excel must have the same security settings that are necessary for interactive updates. Excel must be configured correctly for every IBS-mapped account on the batch server.
- Updating drawings and reports using Intergraph Batch Server requires access to the desktop. For more information, see *Granting Jobs Access to the Desktop* (on page 168).
- The following entries need to be added to the system path for 3D model data documents to update:
 - [Product Folder]\Core\Runtime
 - [Product Folder]\Common2D\Rad2d\Bin
 - [Product Folder]\GeometryTopology\Runtime.
- The ConfigureDrawingsBatch utility must be run each time mapped account settings are changed.

SECTION 11 Getting Started

This section discusses how to map individual workstation computers to the server databases, start the software, and begin performing various tasks in the software environment.

IMPORTANT You must create the seven databases before running the software. For additional information, refer to the section entitled *Configuring the Databases* (on page 141).

See Also

Open SmartPlant 3D (on page 175)

In This Section

Update Site Database Name and Path	173
Open SmartPlant 3D	175
Configure Your Tasks	175
Define Your Workspace	176
Save Session Files	177

Update Site Database Name and Path

Perform the following steps from a SmartPlant 3D workstation computer on which the **Project Management** and **SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity** options are installed.

SQL Server Databases

1. Open the Modify Database and Schema Location utility.

🧊 Modify Site Database Location		
Set the active site database and site schem	a.	
Data <u>b</u> ase type:		<u> </u>
SQL Server 🗨		Cancel
Site database <u>s</u> erver:	Site database n <u>a</u> me:	
Document1\Huntsville	Plant_SDB	-
Site schema ser <u>v</u> er:	Site schema na <u>m</u> e:	
Document1\Huntsville	Plant_SDB_SCHEMA	

- 2. In the **Site database server** box, type the name of the server on which the Site database resides or select it from the drop-down list of recently used Site database servers.
- 3. In the **Site database name** box, type the name of the Site database or select it from the drop-down list of recently used Site databases.
- 4. The **Site schema server** box value is set when you specify the Site database server and Site database name.

5. The **Site schema name** box value is set when you specify the Site database server and Site database name.

IP If SQL is not installed locally, you can get the names from your database administrator.

6. Click **OK**.

Oracle Databases

1. Open the Modify Database and Schema Location utility.

🕫 Modify Site Database Location	
Set the active site database and site schem Data <u>b</u> ase type: Oracle	a. OK Cancel
Oracle <u>s</u> ervice name:	Site database n <u>a</u> me:
Oracle service name:	Site schema name: PLANT_SDB_SCHEMA

- 2. In the Database type list, select Oracle.
- In the Oracle service name box, type the name of the Oracle net service for the Site database connection or select it from the drop-down list of recently used Oracle service names.
- 4. In the **Site database name** box, type the name of the Site database or select it from the drop-down list of recently used Site databases.
- 5. The **Oracle service name** box value is set when you specify the Oracle net service and Site database name.
- 6. In the **Site schema name** box value is set when you specify the Oracle net service and Site database name.
- 7. Click **OK**.

NOTE The first time you run the software after installing it, the software prompts you for the Site database name and sets the Site database name and path automatically.

See Also

Getting Started (on page 173)

Open SmartPlant 3D

Each time that you use SmartPlant 3D, you can create a session that allows you to save certain settings, such as window size, layout, and view orientation from one work session to the next.

- Before using the software, verify that the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) is started on all computers. For information on starting MSDTC, see Verify Startup of Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator in XP (on page 85).
- A user who is a member of the Windows Administrators group on the workstation computer must start the software once on the workstation computer before a user without administrative privileges can successfully start the software.
- 1. Click Start > All Programs > Intergraph SmartPlant 3D > SmartPlant 3D.
- 2. Select one of the templates on the New dialog box.

TIP A template is a standard Workspace file. You use a template as a pattern to assemble the parameters that you want for a new work session. Two standard templates are delivered with the software: **English Units** and **Metric Units**.

3. Click OK.

NOTE After you open SmartPlant 3D, you can use commands on the **File** menu to create new sessions, open previous sessions, save sessions, and close sessions. For more information, refer to the online documentation for the **Common** task or the *Common User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

See Also

Getting Started (on page 173)

Configure Your Tasks

Common operations within the various tasks of SmartPlant 3D are performed the same way. Therefore, the Common task refers to the functions shared with other tasks and identifies the commands required to accomplish these functions.

The Common task allows you to define a workspace, as well as perform common operations on that workspace. The workspace represents the portion of the plant data that you need to perform your intended task. The session includes the view settings for user modeling, as well as your personal filters for viewing the data. Many other tasks on the **Tasks** menu are not available until you have defined your workspace.

After defining your workspace, you can use the **Tasks** menu to move between the various design tasks. You can perform specified functions, depending on your access permissions. After you select a task, the interface and available functionality is displayed. Some of the commands and functionality are unique to the particular task. For example, some commands for the Piping task are not available in the Equipment and Furnishings task. However, most of the Common task commands are available in all of the various design tasks. You use the Common task commands and functionality the same way regardless of the active task. For example, the commands that appear on the **View** and **File** menus function the same way in every task.

To use the tasks available in SmartPlant 3D, you must configure them for your session. Once you configure the tasks that you wish to use, you must then define your workspace. Once you define your workspace and configure your task list, you can save your session file.

1. In SmartPlant 3D, click Tasks > Configure Task List.

2. On the **Configure Task List** dialog box, select each task in the list that you want to add to the menu from the **Available task environments** list.

TP You can select multiple tasks by dragging down the list or holding **Shift** and dragging.

- 3. Click Add.
- 4. Click OK.

NOTE

- You have to perform the above procedure only once for your session file. The software remembers the tasks when you re-open the session file.
- For detailed information regarding how to configure tasks in SmartPlant 3D, refer to the online documentation for the Common task or the Common User's Guide available from Help > Printable Guides.

See Also

Getting Started (on page 173)

Define Your Workspace

When you begin to work in a task, you must first define the content of the workspace, that is, the items with which you want to begin working. By defining only those items that you want from the database, you avoid cluttering the workspace with unneeded and unrelated items.

Select the items for your workspace by using a filter. The filter is a query that retrieves from the database only those items that you specify in the filter criteria.

Defining a workspace also allows you to create and name filters that restrict the data of the entire model into more manageable subsets for working.

The workspace contents that you define appear in the **Workspace Explorer** (WSE) in a classification hierarchy that reflects the various relationships for the design objects. The contents represent the current items loaded from the database into the active workspace.

- 1. If you are not already in the Common task, click **Tasks > Common**.
- 2. Click File > Define Workspace.
- 3. Select the name of the plant database you want to use in the **Plant** box.
- 4. Select Create New Filter in the Filter box.
- 5. On the New Filter Properties dialog box, type a name for the new filter in the Name box.
- 6. Specify the filter search properties by using one or more of the displayed tabs.
- 7. Click **OK** to close the **New Filter Properties** dialog box.
- 8. Click **OK** to return to the model.

NOTES

- After the **Define Workspace** dialog box closes, the window refreshes. Once the refresh is complete, the **Common** window is active. Everything in the **Tasks** menu is now available.
- For more information on workspaces, sessions, and filters refer to the online documentation for the Common task or the Common User's Guide available from Help > Printable Guides.

See Also

Getting Started (on page 173)

Save Session Files

Once you define your workspace and configure your task list, you can save your session file.

- 1. Click File > Save.
- 2. Browse to the folder location where you want to store your session file.
- 3. On the **Save As** dialog box, type the name of your session file in the **File Name** box.
- 4. Click Save.

NOTES For more information on saving session files, refer to the online documentation for the Common task or the Common *User's Guide available* from **Help > Printable Guides** command in the software.

See Also Getting Started (on page 173)

SECTION 12 Application Maintenance

You have three options for Application Maintenance for SmartPlant 3D:

- **Modify** Change the selected features that were installed. Install and/or uninstall individual features to match the new selection.
- **Repair** Using the current feature set installed, repair any missing or corrupted files from the installation.
- **Remove** Removes registry entries, files, and directories that do not contain user data and are not shared by other programs and were put there by the installation.

You can access Application Maintenance by:

- Insert the product CD, or rerun Installation, on a machine that already has the product installed.
- From Control Panel, select Add/Remove Programs, select SmartPlant 3D, and click Change.

NOTE Selecting Remove from the Add/Remove Programs dialog box does not access the Application Maintenance utility. The Remove process is started automatically.

Because the product is already installed on the machine, the **Application Maintenance** dialog appears and you can specify the type of action needed.

🙀 Installation fo	r SmartPlant 3D
Application Mainte Welcome to the So you modify the cur	mance martPlant 3D application maintenance program. This program lets rent installation. Click one of the options below.
	Select new program components to add or select currently installed components to remove.
O R <u>e</u> pair	Reinstall missing or corrupt files, registry keys, and shortcuts. Preferences stored in the registry may be reset to default values.
O <u>B</u> emove	Remove all installed components of SmartPlant 3D from this computer.
Wise Installation Wizard	j⊛ <u>≺B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

For more information on modifying, repairing, or removing the software, see *Modify or Repair SmartPlant 3D* (on page 180).

See Also

Setting Up the Client (on page 81)

Modify or Repair SmartPlant 3D

You can use the **Application Maintenance** utility to modify, repair, or even remove the SmartPlant 3D application. The procedure below shows how to modify or repair the application. For more information on removing (uninstalling) the software, see *Remove Smart 3D Software* (on page 182).

On a computer where the software is installed, insert the product DVD, or rerun **Installation**. The **Application Maintenance** dialog box appears.

😼 Installation for S	Smart 3D	
Application Mainten Select the maintena	ance nce operation to perform.	
Modify Modify	Change which application features are installed. Displays the Select Features dialog, which lets you configure individual features. Reinstall missing or corrupt files, registry keys, and shortcuts. Preferences stored in the registry may be reset to default values.	
O Remove	Uninstall Smart 3D from this computer.	
Wise Installation Wizard ((R) < Back Next > Cancel	

NOTE You can also access this dialog box by selecting **Control Panel > Add/Remove Programs**, then selecting the Smart 3D application and **Change**.

Modify the Currently Installed Features

You can change the selected features that were installed. Install and/or uninstall individual features to match new selections.

- 1. Select the Modify option on the Application Maintenance page and click Next.
- On the Select Features page, select the features that you want to install. For example, if you want to create databases, click the Project Management and SmartPlant 3D Server Connectivity option icons and select Will be installed on local hard drive.
| 🙀 Installation for Smart 3D | |
|---|--|
| Select Features
Please select which features you would like to install. | Ø |
| Image: Optional Features Feature Description: Image: Project Management Installs the Project Management Image: Will be installed on local hard drive. Image: Bentire feature will be installed on local hard drive. | nent client for
cess control, and
martPlant 3D
s also required. |
| Entire feature will be unavailable. | on the local hard |
| This feature requires 216KB | on your hard drive. |
| Wise Installation Wizard (R)
Disk Cost Reset < Back Next > | Cancel |

IMPORTANT

- Before adding and removing features from the setup, review the dependencies that can exist between one feature and another. For more information, see Setting Up the Client (on page 81).
- If you selected the Piping Specification Remote Access Server feature to be installed, the Piping Specification Remote Access Server page appears. Enter a username with administrative privileges to the computer. In the Password and Confirm Password boxes, enter the password of the user, and then click Next.
- 3. Click Browse and select the folder location for the client software, and click OK.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. On the **Ready to Modify the Application** page, verify the installation summary. Click **Back** to return to any previous install pages and make changes.
- 6. Click **Next** to begin installing SmartPlant 3D client software.
- 7. When the installation process is complete, click **Finish**.
 - During the setup, the %temp% value is defined as the user %temp% of the person who runs the setup. In Windows, each user's C:\Documents and Settings\username\Local Settings\Temp is protected from other Windows users. Consequently, you must set the system environment variable TEMP value to a folder location where everyone has write access (that is, C:\Temp). For more information about editing system variables, see the Windows online documentation (click Start > Help from the Windows task bar).
 - If you installed the Piping Specification Remote Access Server feature during the setup, you must verify that the COM+ application is installed and configured on the administrator computer. For more information, see *Configure the Piping Specification Remote Access Server Service (Vista and Windows 7)* (on page 126).

 You can install the Database Interference Detection Service on a different workstation computer. For more information, see *Install Database Interference Detection Service* (on page 154).

Repairing the Currently Installed Features

Using the current feature set installed, you can use the Application Maintenance utility to repair any missing or corrupt files from the installation.

- 1. Select the Repair option on the Application Maintenance dialog box and click Next.
- 2. On the Ready to Repair the Application dialog box, click Next to begin the repair process.

See Also

Application Maintenance (on page 179)

Remove Smart 3D Software

There are two ways to remove, or uninstall, the software from the computer. You can go through the **Control Panel** and use **Add/Remove Programs** to remove the software, or you can insert the product DVD and select **Remove** on the **Application Maintenance** dialog box.

You should keep the following things in mind before removing the software:

- Remove previous versions of SmartPlant 3D software before installing any new versions.
- The Interference Checking Server must be stopped manually before you uninstall.
- The Duplication Synchronization Service must be stopped before you uninstall.
- You must have administrative privileges on the computer before removing the software. Refer to Windows Help for instructions on how to establish administrative privileges.
- Before removing SmartPlant 3D software, ensure that you have preserved all reference data Excel files that are pertinent to your specific project. When you uninstall the software, all files that are stored in the SmartPlant 3D product folders are removed from your computer.

Remove the Software Through Control Panel > Add/Remove Programs

- 1. Click Start > Settings > Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs.
- 3. On the Add/Remove Programs dialog box, select Intergraph Smart 3D or Intergraph Reference Data from the installed programs list, depending on the product that you need to remove.

IMPORTANT In a stand-alone computer configuration where SmartPlant 3D Reference Data and SmartPlant 3D workstation software are installed on the same computer, you must uninstall the client software before you uninstall SmartPlant 3D Reference Data; otherwise, the Registry Engine Editor returns a fatal error.

4. Click Remove, and then click Yes in the Add/Remove Programs confirmation box.

Add or I	Remove Programs
2	Are you sure you want to remove Intergraph Smart 3D from your computer?
	Yes No

- 5. When the uninstall process is complete, close the **Add/Remove Programs** dialog box and close the **Control Panel** window.
- 6. Restart the computer to complete the uninstall.
- 7. Right-click **Start** on the Windows taskbar, select **Explore**, and browse to the SmartPlant 3D product folder.
- 8. Right-click the SmartPlant 3D folder, and click **Delete** to remove the SmartPlant 3D folder and log files.

Remove the Software Using the Application Maintenance Utility

1. On a computer where the software is installed, insert the product DVD, or rerun **Installation**, to start Installation.

The Application Maintenance dialog box appears.

NOTE You can also access this dialog box by selecting **Control Panel > Add/Remove Programs**, then selecting the Smart 3D application and **Change**.

- 2. Select the **Remove** option and click **Next**.
- 3. On the **Smart 3D Uninstall** dialog box, click **Next** to remove the application. If you need to cancel the uninstall process, click **Cancel**.

The Updating System dialog box shows the progress of the uninstall process.

4. When the uninstall has completed, click Finish.

See Also

Application Maintenance (on page 179)

SECTION 13

Recommendation for Database Monitoring

This section is a recommendation for monitoring your SQL Server or Oracle databases for SmartPlant 3D. There are many possible hardware and software configurations that you can use to set up your SmartPlant 3D databases. Refer to the documentation for your components for more information on performance and scalability issues.

See Also

Server Monitoring (on page 185)

Server Monitoring

The details on how to monitor system counters and log the results to a file can be found in the operating system documentation. Intergraph PPM assumes that the reader is already familiar with that topic.

While doing the monitoring at Intergraph PPM, we started from a very broad selection of counters. The analysis of these system parameters with the number of users on the system conducted us to focus on a subset of counter found the most relevant for the scalability and dimensioning analysis. The list of highlighted counters is not a definitive list of what should be monitored, but the list of counters that should be watched with the closest attention. We recommend starting from a wide selection of counters and discard later what is found not to be pertinent.

NOTES

- Testing has demonstrated that these counters can be monitored every second to analyze a specific workflow or every 10 seconds if you plan on monitoring the system for longer times.
- A log file of the user activity should be kept in order to relate the server activity to the actions of the user.
- You can also use the System and Configuration Analyzer tool (SCA) to monitor these parameters. This tool can be downloaded from eCustomer.

Processor

Processor average usage should be kept under 80% for each processor. Isolated spikes over 80% are acceptable.

We recommend monitoring the following counters:

- % Processor time
- % Privileged time
- % User time
- % Interrupt time
- Interrupts per second
- Processor queue length
- Context switches per second

IMPORTANT Any significant discrepancy between the % Processor time and the % User time indicates that the CPU is not available for SQL server and needs to be investigated. This problem did not occur during testing.

Logical Disk and Physical Disks

The recommendation is to monitor the following counters for each physical drive:

- % Disk read time
- % Disk write time
- % Disk time
- % Idle time
- % Average disk queue length
- % Average disk read queue length
- % Average disk write queue length
- Disk second per read
- Disk second per write
- Disk second per transfer
- Disk read per second
- Disk write per second
- Disk transfer per second
- Disk write bytes per second
- Disk read bytes per second

Memory

- Available Mbytes
- Page fault per second
- Page read per second
- Page write per second
- Pages per second

NOTE Page fault per second needs to be monitored only to make sure the system is not overloaded.

Network

- Byte received per second
- Byte sent per second
- Current bandwidth
- Output queue length

Record PING times between client and server to verify that the software is not being affected by other network traffic.

Database (Microsoft SQL Server)

Buffer Manager Object

Counter to monitor:

- Buffer cache hit ratio
- Procedure cache pages
- Free pages

- Page read per second
- Stolen pages
- Page writes per second
- Free List Stalls per second
- Total pages
- Page Life expectancy
- Page reads/sec Number
- Page writes/sec Number

IMPORTANT Buffer cache ratio should remain over 90%. During testing, the ratio has always been in the 95-99% range.

SQL Databases Object

We recommend monitoring the following counter at least for the Tempdb, Catalog, and Model databases. You can monitor the other SmartPlant 3D databases as well. For performance testing, the Tempdb database should be monitored.

- Data file size
- Log file size
- % log used
- Transaction per second
- Active transaction

The transaction per second was not found very relevant for SmartPlant 3D because the software executes very few transactions per second (one transaction per command normally). Also, note that two different commands, that is, two transactions can have a very different impact on the database. Testing has shown that the measure of how much the software "hits" the database server is best measured with the number of batch requests per second.

SQL Statistics Object

- Batch request per second
- SQL compilation per second
- SQL re-compilation per second

SQL Locks

- Average wait time (ms)
- Lock timeouts/second
- Lock waits/second
- Number of deadlocks per second

A certain amount of locking is to be expected because of the way SQL manages data integrity. Excessive locking, however, can lead to blocking and needs to be analyzed in order to correct the software. Any deadlock situation needs to be analyzed.

SQL Latches

- Average latch wait time (ms)
- Latch wait per second

Database (ORACLE)

Oracle performance counters can be monitored using the web-ui that installs with Oracle or by using the System and Configuration Analyser tool (SCA) available from eCustomer. Please consult Oracle documentation for details on it.

Oracle Database Counters:

Dictionary Cache Hit Ratio – Should be > 90

- Library Cache Hit Ratio Should be >= 99%
- DB Block Buffer Cache Hit Ratio Should be > 90
- Log Switch Interval Should be greater than 30 minutes

Oracle Reports:

 Automatic Database Diagnostics Monitor (ADDM) report – This report can be generated from the Oracle Database Console or using the SCA tool available on eCustomer.

See Also

Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185)

Results Analysis

The classical way to analyze database activity is to analyze the activity generated by each command (place an order, repeat order, order status, and so on) and extrapolate the response of the system to a given load. For example, if placing an order causes one physical read on the data file disk, the maximum number of orders that can be placed in one minute can be computed.

Given the huge number of commands that exist in the software, this approach is not practical for our system. Instead, the focus is placed on measuring the typical activity per interactive user for a given environment. Getting reliable average data requires having several users working concurrently. The data generated by a single interactive user is usually too noisy to be used.

After the data is collected for a given load, the response of the system can be extrapolated to a higher load assuming a linear response up to a critical value. Refer to Microsoft SQL Server or Oracle performance tuning documentation for more details.

Example

The following graphic shows some of the system parameters while two users are routing pipes and two users are creating beams in structure:



Read per second ModelDB log	0.003
Write per second ModelDB log	2.83
Reads per second C drive	0.12
Writes per second C drive	2.50
Batch per second	290

CPU

- CPU capacity = 2 (processors) × 500 MHz = 1 GHz
- CPU usage per user = CPU capacity × (average CPU % used / number of users) = 1 GHz × .15/4 users = approximately .0375 GHz per user

Therefore, for a single 1.0 GHz processor:

- Usage capacity = 1.0 GHz × .75 (critical usage percentage or usable capacity)
- Number of users = Usable capacity / CPU usage per user

The system should support (0.75/0.0375) GHz per user = 20 users per GHz.

Model Data File

- Total physical I/O per second = 2.75 (Model DB writes) + 0.003 (Model DB reads) = 2.75 physical I/O per second for 4 users = approximately 0.69 physical I/O per second per user
- Ignoring RAID factor and taking a standard Max I/O = 70 × 75% = 52

Therefore using the same disk characteristics, can support 59/0.68 = 75 users per disk.

Model Log File

- Total physical I/O per second = 2.83 (ModelDB writes) + 0.003 (ModelDB reads) = 2.83 physical I/O per second for 4 users
- Ignoring RAID factor and taking a standard Max I/O = $70 \times 75\%$ = 52.

Therefore using the same disk characteristics, can support 52/0.71 = 73 users per disk.

- Testing has determined that the main hardware parameters driving the scalability of the system are the CPU and the I/Os.
 - A system different than the one used for testing purposes can lead to completely different results. For example, if the memory is scarce, more loads are placed on the I/O system.
 - Because the log file I/Os are mostly sequential, the system can achieve about 150 sequential I/Os per second per physical disk, compared with only 50 random I/Os per second per physical disk.

Other Considerations

IFC

IFC imposes a very significant load on the database server (equivalent to several simultaneous interactive users). We recommend turning off IFC to measure the database activity generated by the interactive users using the design applications (piping, structure, and so on).

Reports

Some reports can put a heavy burden on the server. Intergraph PPM advises monitoring the reports activity separately from the database activity generated by the interactive users using design applications (piping, structure, and so on).

See Also

Recommendation for Database Monitoring (on page 185)

SECTION 14 Troubleshooting the Software

To troubleshoot the software, several of the software components provide log files that can provide pertinent information about the software. Additionally, the software delivers a variety of utilities as troubleshooting tools. You can locate the various log files by searching the hard drive on your computer with *.log. You can open log files and view their contents using a text editor such as Notepad. Log and error files are saved to your system Temp folder unless you specify another folder.

Log Files

To enable the error log file, use Windows Explorer to navigate to [Product Folder]\Core\Tools\Administrator\Bin and execute **ErrorLogEnable.exe**. This utility allows you to configure the delivery location of the log file, the file name, and four levels of logged information.

nable Error Log	23
🔽 Log run time errors	
Select the severity of the errors to be reported:	
<u>B</u> rowse	
 Generate time-based log file name at each new start of SP3D task host Preserve User Settings Add OS stats (cputime, memory) to every record (performance cost) Add Stack Traces to Error records 	
Start memory monitor automatically when SP3D starts	'
OK Cance	:

Log run time error - Check this box to enable error logging. Clear this box to stop error logging. **Select the severity of the errors to be reported** - Select the error reporting level. The higher the level that you select, the more information is written to the log file. Intergraph recommends that you use level 1 at all times. The higher level error reporting (2 - Detailed, 3 - Complete, and 4 - Exhaustive) slows the software performance, and is only necessary if Intergraph support requests detailed log information while tracking a problem. In all normal cases, this option should be set to 1 - Normal. **Error log full file name** - Specify the path and name of the log file. We recommend that you specify a location where all users have write access; otherwise, problems associated with updating the error log file may prevent users from receiving a desired response. For example, if you set the log to write to UserA's Temp folder, then UserA is the only one who can create or update the log file. Other users (with the exception of an administrator) will not have access to UserA's Temp folder. Likewise, if you configure the software to generate the log file in a folder under the Program Files path, only those users who belong to the Power Users or the Administrator groups will have write access to the log file. Keep disk access privileges in mind when you are configuring the log file.

Generate time-based log file name at each new start of SP3D task host - Depending on how you configure it, SmartPlant 3D overwrites the log file each time you start the software. If you need to save an existing copy of the log file, rename the file before starting the software or check this option.

Preserve User Settings - Check this option to save severity level setting and the error log file name for just the active user. Clear this option to save the severity level setting and error log file name for all users on this computer.

Add OS stats to every record - Check this option to add your operating system status (such as CPU percentage and memory usage) to each log message. Please note that selecting this option slows down the software performance and likely your entire system's performance. You only need to check this option at the request of Intergraph support. It is important to notice that if SmartPlant 3D uses more than 2 GB of memory during execution, the OS stats logged for each error take more than half a second to calculate. Intergraph recommends that this option be checked only temporarily as requested by Intergraph support while tracking an issue.

Add Stack Traces to Error records - Check this option to add the stack of the function registering the error. Please note that this option slows down software performance and likely your entire system's performance.

Start memory monitor automatically when SP3D starts - Check this option to start the Memory Monitor automatically every time SmartPlant 3D starts. You can also click **Start Memory Monitor** to manually start the Memory Monitor. For more information, see Appendix: S3DMemoryMonitor in the *SmartPlant 3D Common User's Guide*.

An error log is always created. If there is not a location specified, the default location is your Temp folder, or %TEMP%, for the process being executed. If the Log run time error option is not checked, this automatically generated error log is deleted with the software completes processing. In case the software crashes or completes in another abnormal way, the error log is left on disk to help Intergraph support diagnose the problem that occurred. In addition, it is possible that two more files are created: WER_SP3DErrors_<timestamp>.log and S3DHost_<timestamp>.dmp. When contacting Intergraph support, please also make these files available as part of your Service Request.

Troubleshooting Tools

You can use tools delivered with the Core to troubleshoot the software. These tools are located in [Product Folder]\Core\Tools\Administrator\Bin.

CrashSP3D.exe - Allows you to forcefully crash SmartPlant 3D. This is useful when you want to log a hang, either in a command that never completes or a command that takes a long time to process. It can also be useful when an unexpected error dialog displays and you want to log a Service Request for the issue. In SmartPlant 3D, crash events are recorded in a .dmp file and stored in the specified Temp folder. Along with the .dmp file, copies of the Errorlog and WER_SP3DErrors.log file are also stored in the specified Temp folder, which are all useful in determining the reason for certain problems that occur in the product. CrashSP3D.exe allows you to crash SmartPlant 3D to obtain a copy of the .dmp, Errorlog, and WER_SP3DErrors file for troubleshooting purposes. When activated, CrashSP3D.exe

allows you to select which instance of SmartPlant 3D you want to forcefully crash. Contact Intergraph support for more information about the options available in this utility and when to use them.

- ErrorLogEnable.exe Specifies the severity of logged runtime errors. The default setting is

 which means only critical errors are logged. Setting 4 will log many more errors, including
 warnings, and could impact performance. You can also specify the name and location of the
 log file.
- **IMSRenderFlag.exe** Allows you to troubleshoot video card issues. Contact Intergraph support for more information about the options available in this utility and when to use them.
- VersionCheck.exe Displays the version for each task component in the software.

For more detailed information about troubleshooting tools delivered with the software, see the *SmartPlant 3D Troubleshooting Guide*. The guide is available from **Help > Printable Guides** in the software.

User Assistance

SmartPlant 3D user assistance makes command information available as you perform tasks. You can access different kinds of information any time that you are running the software. This information could include reference topics, narrative descriptions, or step-by-step instructional material.

Printable Guides

User's Guides in PDF format are accessible, flexible, and fully searchable alternative to Help. The information found in the User's Guides is also available from Help. The User's Guides delivered with the software are located in C:\Program Files\Common Files\Intergraph\SmartPlant\Help. Copies of the user's guides can also be found in the Help folder on the Intergraph Product DVD. To view these PDF documents, you will need Adobe Acrobat Reader with Search version 3.0 or higher. You can download the latest version of the Acrobat Reader from the Adobe web site. After you have installed the Acrobat Reader, you can open files individually by using the **File > Open** command in the Acrobat Reader.

Help

SmartPlant 3D offers a variety of ways for you to receive help on how to use the software.

A structured table of contents, an index, and full-text search capabilities provide easy access to Help topics. You can access the table of contents by clicking **SmartPlant 3D** on the **Help** menu.

SmartPlant 3D Help is a complete reference tool accessible at any time the application is in use. Help provides complete command descriptions for each toolbar button, menu command, and ribbon in the software. It also gives step-by-step procedures for common tasks; for example, if you need to perform a certain task, search and display the topic. You can move or resize your application and Help windows so that they are next to each other. As such, you can follow the procedures without having to search for the pages in the documentation.

SmartPlant 3D Help is task-specific. For example, to view **Common Help**, enter the **Common task**, and click **Help** > **SmartPlant 3D Help**. To see more specific information, select one of the major topics or perform a search on a specific topic.



Show/Hide Show or hide the left pane of the dialog box, including the **Contents**, **Index**, and **Search**.

Back - Returns you to the last Help topic you viewed. This button is disabled when you reach the first topic in the series.

Forward - Displays the next topic in a series of related topics. This button is disabled when you reach the last topic in the series.

Options - Displays a list of functions available for the Help viewer.

Contents - Displays a hierarchical listing of the topics in the Help file.

Index - Displays an index for the Help file.

Search - Performs a full-text search on a word or phrase that you entered in the Search box.

NOTE For more information, refer to the *Common User's Guide* available from **Help > Printable Guides** within the software.

Customer Assistance

For the latest Support Services information for this product, use a World Wide Web browser to connect to http://support.intergraph.com.

Common Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning
2D	Two-Dimensional
3D	Three-Dimensional
CD	Compact Disc
COM+	Component Object Model - Plus
DCOM	Distributed Component Object Model
DTC	Distributed Transaction Coordinator
DuSS	Duplication Synchronization Service
EPC	Engineering Procurement Construction
ERP	Enterprise Resource Planning
FAT	File Allocation Table
FEED	Front-End Engineering and Design
GB	Gigabyte
GHz	Gigahertz
GWC	Global Workshare Configuration
IFC	Interference Checking
I/O	Input/Output
MB	Megabyte
MHz	Megahertz
MDAC	Microsoft Data Access Components
MMC	Microsoft Management Console
MSDTC	Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator
NTFS	NT File System
O&M	Operations and Maintenance
P&ID	Piping and Instrumentation Diagram
PPM	Process, Power & Marine
RAM	Random-Access Memory

Troubleshooting the Software

ROM	Read-Only Memory
RPC	Remote Procedure Call
SQL	Structural Query Language
SP	Service Pack
SM3D	SmartMarine 3D
SP3D	SmartPlant 3D
TIP	Transaction Internet Protocol
VB	Visual Basic
XML	Extensible Markup Language

APPENDIX A

Appendix: Install and Configure Oracle Software

Install and Configure Oracle Server Software

During installation of the database components, setup displays various dialog boxes that prompt you for information. We recommend that you refer to your Oracle documentation for specific instructions concerning the dialog boxes and wizard pages.

IMPORTANT All domain verified user names and passwords must use ASCII7/English characters. Oracle does not support non-ASCII / English characters in domain user names or passwords and will not work. This limitation applies only to Oracle, not Intergraph.

This is a guide for installing **Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Server** in a SmartPlant 3D environment.

Topics

Oracle Server Configuration	197
Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Server Software Installation	198
Delete the Default Oracle Database	201
Create the SmartPlant 3D Oracle 11g Database	202
Oracle Post-Installation Requirements	207

Oracle Server Configuration

- 1. Log in as a user with administrator access to the server.
- Turn off Windows Firewall. If this is not an option, please refer to the Installation Guide for information on the exceptions that must be put into place prior to installing Oracle on Windows 7.
- 3. In the Folder Options of Windows Explorer, remove the check from Simple File Sharing.
 - a. Open Windows Explorer.
 - b. Press ALT and select Tools.
 - c. Select Folder Options.
 - d. Select the **View** tab.
 - e. Scroll to the bottom and remove the check from Use Simple File Sharing (Recommended).
- 4. Click OK.

See Also

Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Server Software Installation (on page 198) Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197)

Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Server Software Installation

This section will guide you through the installation process for Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) server software with Patch 8.

- 1. Open the hosts file and enter the IP address and server host name. The hosts file is located in C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts.
- 2. Add the environment variable **ORACLE_HOSTNAME=**<server name> in the System Environment Variables.
- 3. Run **setup.exe** from the install disk or folder.
- 4. Enter your security update information in the **Configure Security Updates** screen, and click **Next**.
- 5. Select Create and configure a database in the Select Installation Option screen, and click Next.
- 6. Select Server Class in the System Class screen, and click Next.
- 7. Select **Single instance database installation** in the **Grid Installation Options** screen, and click **Next**.
- 8. Select Advanced install in the Select Install Type screen, and click Next.
- 9. Select the installation language in the **Select Product Languages** screen, and click **Next**.
- 10. Select Enterprise Edition (3.34GB) in the Select Database Edition screen, and click Next.
- 11. Specify the **Oracle Base** location for the base folder and the **Software Location** for the home folder by browsing to the location.

Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Ins Specify Installation Location	taller - Installing da	
Configure Security Updates	Specify an Oracle Oracle base direct	base path to place all Oracle software and configuration-related files. This location is the tory.
System Class	Oracle Base: D:1	Voracle
Grid Installation Options	Specify a location	for storing Oracle software files. This location is the Oracle home directory.
Product Languages	Software Location	r: D:\Oracle\product\11.2.0\dbhome_1 Browse Browse
Installation Location		
Prerequisite Checks		
V Summary		
O Finish		
Help		< Back Next > Finish Cancel

12. Select General Purpose / Transaction Processing in the Select Configuration Type screen, and click Next.

13. Specify the Global database name and Oracle Service Identifier (SID) values in the Specify Database Identifiers screen.

👙 Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Inst	taller - Installing database - Step	10 of 19	
Specify Database Identifiers			ORACLE 118
Configure Security Updates	An Oracle database is uniquely	dentified by a Global Database Name, typic	cally of the form "name.domain".
R Installation Option	<u>G</u> lobal database name:	orcl.servername.com	
System Class			
Grid Installation Options			
🙏 Install Type	A database is referenced by at this computer by an Oracle Serv	east one Oracle instance that is uniquely i ice Identifier (SID).	dentified from any other instance on
Product Languages			
🔍 Database Edition	Oracle Service Identifier (SID):	orcl	
Installation Location			
Configuration Type			
Database Identifiers			
<u>Configuration Options</u>			
Management Options			
Database Storage			
Recovery			
Schema Passwords			
Prerequisite Checks			
Summary			
Install Product			
🗸 Finish 🗧			
		- Parth	Nut Cisish Creat
		< <u>D</u> ack	

14. Select the **Memory** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and select the **Enable Automatic Memory Management** option. The percentage of memory allowed for an instance of Oracle should not exceed 40%. If you have more than one Oracle instance on this server, the allocated memory should not exceed 40% of the system memory.

👙 Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Insta	ller - Installing database - Step 11 of 19
Specify Configuration Options	
Configure Security Updates Installation Option System Class Grid Installation Options Install Type Product Languages Database Edition Installation Location Configuration Options Database Identifiers Configuration Options Management Options Database Storage Backup and Recovery Schema Passwords Prerequisite Checks Summary Install Product Finish	Memory Character sets Security Sample Schemas Enabling Automatic Memory Management allows the database to distribute memory automatically between the system global area (SGA) and the program global area (PGA), based on user-specified overall database memory target size. If automatic memory management is not enabled, then the SGA and PGA must be sized manually. Image: Character sets If automatic memory management is not enabled, then the SGA and PGA must be sized manually. Image: Character sets If automatic memory management is not enabled, then the SGA and PGA must be sized manually. Image: Character sets If automatic memory Management Allocate Memory: 256 Image: SGA target: AUTO Memory: 256 Image: SGA target: AUTO Memory: SGA target: Autoro MB Target Database Memory: 1638 Memory: 1638
Help	< Back Next > Einish Cancel

15. Select the **Character sets** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen and select the **Use Unicode (AL32UTF8)** option.

NOTES

- All products in SmartPlant Enterprise that participate in integration should set their encodings to Use Unicode (AL32UTF8) for the Database Character Set option, and to AL16UTF16 - Unicode UTF-16 Universal character set for the National Character Set option.
- For more information about the **Character sets** option, see your Oracle installation documentation.
- 16. Select the **Security** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and choose your security settings option.
- 17. Select the **Sample Schemas** tab on the **Specify Configuration Options** screen, and select the **Create database with sample schemas** option. Click **Next**.
- 18. Select the **Use Database Control for database management** option on the **Specify Management Options** screen. You can also enable notifications through email with this option.
- 19. Select **File System** in the **Specify Database Storage Options** screen and specify a database file location. Click **Next**.
- 20. Specify your recovery options in the Specify Recovery Options screen, and click Next.
- 21. Specify your schema passwords in the **Specify Schema Passwords** screen, and click **Next**. You must choose either the **Use different passwords for these accounts** or **Use the same password for all accounts** option.

The software checks that all prerequisite software is installed on the computer.

- 22. Click Finish in the Summary screen.
- 23. Click **Close** after the installation process is finished.

See Also

Delete the Default Oracle Database (on page 201) Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197)

Delete the Default Oracle Database

The default database created earlier in this workflow must now be deleted. The following steps will guide you through this process.

- 1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Oracle > Configuration and Migration Tools > Database Configuration Assistant.
- 2. Click Next on the Welcome screen.
- 3. Select **Delete a Database**, and click **Next**.
- 4. Select the default database that was created, and click **Finish**.
- 5. Click Yes when asked if you want to proceed.
- 6. The **Database Configuration Assistant** asks if you want to perform another operation. Click **No**.

TIP Because no databases exist yet, this is a convenient time to load Oracle patches on the server. Oracle patch 8 needs to be installed before creating the Oracle database.

See Also

Create the SmartPlant 3D Oracle 11g Database (on page 202) Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197)

Create the SmartPlant 3D Oracle 11g Database

These steps will guide you through the database creation process. If you plan on creating a Global Workshare, you need to review the steps for that type of database creation.

- 1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Oracle > Configuration and Migration Tools > Database Configuration Assistant.
- 2. In the **Database Configuration Assistant** screen, select **Create a Database**, and click **Next**.

3. In the Database Template screen, select the Custom Database option, and click Next.

Database Configuration Assi	stant, Step 2 c	f 12 : Database Templates	
	Template database necessan after datab	s that include datafiles contain pre-created databases. They all in minutes, as opposed to an hour or more. Use templates wit v, such as when you need to change attributes like block size, v pase creation.	ow you to create a new hout datafiles only when vhich cannot be altered
	Select	Template	Includes Datafiles
	0	General Purpose or Transaction Processing	Yes
	9	Custom Database	No
Magnettylakanian Magnettylakanian Magnetylakanian	0	Data Warehouse	Yes
Australiantin Australiantin Martigliantin Martigliantin Martigliantin Martigliantin Martigliantin Martigliantin Martigliantin			
			Show Details
Cancel Help)	S Back	yext ≫)

- 4. Enter the name of the new database in the **Database Identification** screen. Generally, the **Global Database Name** and the **SID** are identical. These names can be no longer than eight characters.
- 5. In the **Management Options** screen, click **Next** without changing the default selections. **Configure Enterprise Manager** and **Configure Database Control for local management** are the default options.

Database Configuration Assistar	nt, Step 4 of 12 : Management Optio	ns 🗆 🗆 🗙
	Enterprise Manager	Automatic Maintenance Tasks
	Configure Enterprise Manager	,
	O Register with Grid Control fo	r centralized management
	Management Service	No Agents Found
	Configure Database Control	for local management
	Enable Alert Notifications	ion local management
	Outgoing Mail (SMTP) Servi	er:
	Recipient Email Address:	
	🗆 Enable Daily Disk Backup	to Recovery Area
	Backup Start Time:	02 00 00 AM C PM
	OS Username:	
	OS Password:	
Cancel Help		🔇 Back 🛛 Next 📎

6. In the **Database Credentials** screen, select a security option and provide the appropriate information. Click **Next**.

1	For security reasons, you r database.	nust specify passwords for	the following user accounts in the new
	OUse Different Adminis	trative Passwords	
	User Name	Password	Confirm Password
	SYS		
	SYSTEM		
	DBSNMP		
	Use the Same Admini Password:	strative Password for All Ac	counts
	Confirm Password: 🛛 🛧	******	

7. On the **Database File Locations** screen, select **File System** and **Use Common Location for All Database Files**. Browse to the appropriate files location, and click **OK**. A subfolder is created in the folder you choose and is named with the SID you provided earlier in step 4.

Database Configuration Assistant, Step 6 of 12 : Database File Locations	
Specify storage type and locations for database Storage Type: File System Storage Locations: Use Database File Locations from Templat Use Common Location for All Database File Database Files Location: Database Files Location: dtoracle/oradata Use Oracle-Managed Files Database Area: Multiplex Redo Logs and Control Files Multiplex Redo Logs and Control Files If you want to specify different locations for database files dtoracle-Managed Files and use the locations if you use Oracle-Managed Files	files. te es a Browse Browse Browse for any database files, pick any of the above options ne Storage page later to customize each file ss, Oracle automatically generates the names for ed on the Storage page. File Location Variables
Cancel Help	C Back Next > Einish

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Select Specify Flash Recovery Area in the Recovery Configuration screen, and click Next.

Database Configuration Assista	nt, Step 7 of 12 : Recovery Configurat	tion
	Choose the recovery options for the	database:
	🗹 Specify Flash Recovery Area	
	This is used as the default for a required for automatic disk base the database files and recovery and performance.	II disk based backup and recovery operations, and is also ed backup using Enterprise Manager. Oracle recommends that files be located on physically different disks for data protection
	Flash Recovery Area:	{ORACLE_BASE}
Vigoritzijkalanism Wigorizzijkalanism Wigorizzijkalanism Vigorizzijkalanism	Flash Recovery Area Size:	4977 M Bytes *
Managada and an and an and an	C Enable Archiving	Edit Archive Mode Parameters)
		File Location Variables)
Cancel Help		S Back Next S Einish

10. In the **Database Content** screen, select the **Enterprise Manager Repository** option and click **Next**.

Database Configuration Assista	nt, Step 8 of 11 : Database Content	
	~	
	Database Components Custom Scrip	ts
-	Select the components you want to configure in which you want the component to reside. Installed or depend on components which a	e for use in your database. Provide the tablespace Components which appear disabled are either not ire not selected.
	Oracle Text	SYSAUX
	Cracle OLAP	SYSAUX -
	🗆 Oracle Spatial	SYSAUX
	🗆 Oracle Label Security	SYSTEM
	🗆 Sample Schemas	SYSAUX -
	Enterprise Manager Repository	SYSAUX -
	🗖 Oracle Warehouse Builder	SYSAUX -
	🗆 Oracle Database Vault	SYSAUX -
	C Oracle Database Extensions for .NET	SYSAUX -
		Standard Database Components)
Cancel Help		C Back Next >> Einish

11. Select the **Memory** tab on the **Initialization Parameters** screen and select the **Typical** option. The percentage of memory allowed for an instance of Oracle should not exceed 40%. If you have more than one Oracle instance on this server, the allocated memory should not exceed 40% of the system memory.

	Memory S	izing Chara	acter Sets Connection Mode	
	Typical			
i 🔁 🔁	Memory Size (SGA and	PGA): 1637 MB	, <u> </u>	
···	Percentage:	40 %	390 MB	4093 ME
	🔽 Use Automatic Memo	ory Management	Show Memory Distribution)	
	C Custom			
	Memory Management	Automatic Shared	l Memory Management	
	SGA Size:	1227	M Bytes 👻	
	PGA Size:	409	M Bytes 🔻	
	Total Memory for Oracle	: 1637 M Bytes		
	All Initialization Paramotore			

On the Sizing tab, configure the Processes option based on this formula.
 Processes ≈ (Maximum Number of SmartPlant 3D Users * 10) + (Number of Oracle System Processes)

NOTE The number of Oracle system processes can vary based on the number of background processes that are running. This number is a high estimate. Overestimate the number to ensure it will only use the number of processes that the instance needs.

13. Select the Character Sets tab. and select the Use Unicode (AL32UTF8) option.

NOTES

- . All products in SmartPlant Enterprise that participate in integration should set their encodings to Use Unicode (AL32UTF8) for the Database Character Set option, and to AL16UTF16 - Unicode UTF-16 Universal character set for the National Character Set option.
- . For more information about the Character Set options, see your Oracle installation documentation.
- 14. Select the Connection Mode tab, and select Dedicated Server Mode.
- 15. In the Connection Mode tab, select All Initialization Parameters.
- 16. Click Show Advanced Parameters.

The parameters required by SmartPlant 3D are listed below:

Name	Value	Override Def.	Basic
compatible	11.2.0.0.0	*	٢
db_domain	DOMAIN.COM	×	×
db_files	1000	×	
distributed_lock_timeo ut	180	*	
global_names	TRUE	*	
job_queue_processes	10	×	
log_archive_config	SEND	×	
log_archive_dest	O:\OracleLogs\ArchiveL ogs	*	
open_cursors	3000	×	×
open_links	10	×	
open_links_per_install ation	10	*	
os_authent_prefix			
processes	200	×	×
undo_retention	3600	×	

1. Click Close after the changes have been made, and click Next on the Database Configuration dialog box.

NOTE The control files should be divided among multiple physical hard drives. This file is needed by the database to start.

2. Verify that the path in the **Tablespaces** folder is correct for **SYSAUX**, **SYSTEM**, **TEMP**, **UNDOTBS1**, and **USERS**.

NOTE The information in the **Datafiles** and **Redo Log Groups** folders can retain the default settings as long as the folder path is correct.

3. Click Next.

NOTE The **Creation Options** screen allows you to save your database configuration as a template file, and also allows you to generate database creation scripts.

IMPORTANT Not every setting is preserved in the template file. If you re-use template files, check the parameters carefully to verify the settings are correct.

4. When you have finished configuring the database, click **Finish**.

NOTE The first 15% of the creation process validates the configuration settings. After the first 15% of the process has successfully passed, the database creation succeeds without any errors.

5. After the Database Configuration Assistant completes the database creation, click Exit.

See Also

Oracle Post-Installation Requirements (on page 207) Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197) Appendix: Install and Configure Oracle Software (on page 197)

Oracle Post-Installation Requirements

- 1. Create an administrator user (local or domain).
- 2. Add this administrator to the ORA_DBA group.

NOTE There is no need to have both Oracle Server and Oracle Client on the same computer.

- 3. Make sure the Administrators, System, and Users Windows groups have full access to the SharedContent folder on the reference data computer.
- 4. Make sure the Administrators and System account have full permissions to the Database Templates folder.

See Also

Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197)

Oracle Database 11g Release 2 Installation

This section guides you through the installation process for Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.0.2) with Patch 8.

- 1. Open the hosts file and enter the IP address and server host name. The hosts file is located in C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts.
- 2. Add the environment variable **ORACLE_HOSTNAME=**<server name> in the System Environment Variables.
- 3. Run setup.exe from the installation disk or folder.
- 4. Select Custom in the Select Installation Type screen, and click Next.
- 5. Select Skip software updates in the Download Software Updates screen, and click Next.
- 6. Select the installation language in the Select Product Languages screen, and click Next.
- 7. Specify the **Oracle Base** location for the base folder and the **Software Location** for the home folder by browsing to the location.

👙 Oracle Client Installer - Setting up	Client - Step 5 of 9
Specify Installation Location	
Select Installation Mode	Specify an Oracle base path to place all Oracle software and configuration-related files. This location is the Oracle base directory.
Download Software Updates	Oracle Base: D:10racle11g Browse
Select Product Languages	
Specify Installation Location	Specify a location for storing Oracle software files. This location is the Oracle home directory.
Perform Prerequisite Checks	Software Location: D:10racle11glproduct111.2.0/client_1
ý Summary	
 Install Product 	
Ú Finish	
Help	< Back Next > Install Carnel
	- Town Towns (install Councer

8. Select the product components to install in the **Available Product Components** screen, and click **Next**.



9. Specify the port number on which the Oracle MTS Recovery Service will listen for requests in the **Specify port number** box, and click **Next**.

👙 Oracle Client Installer - Setting up	Client - Step 7 of 11
Oracle Services for Microso	off Transaction Services \bigcirc
Select Installation Mode Select Installation Type Download Software Updates	The Oracle MTS Recovery Service is automatically installed with Oracle Services for Microsoft Transaction Server. The Oracle MTS Recovery Service accepts requests to resolve in-doubt MS DTC-coordinated transactions started on this computer. Enter the port number on which the Oracle MTS Recovery Service will listen for requests on this computer.
Select Product Languages Specify Installation Location Available Product Components	Specify port number: 2030
Oracle Services for MTS Perform Prerequisite Checks	
Summary Install Product	
5 Finish	
Help	< Back Next > Install Cancel

- 10. Wait while the software performs the prerequisite checks, and click **Next**.
- 11. Click **Install** in the **Summary** screen. The **Oracle Net Configuration Assistant** displays.
- 12. Select Perform typical configuration in the Welcome screen, click Next.

Oracle Net Configuration	Assistant: Welcome	×
	Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant. This tool will take you through the common configuration steps, listed below. Naming Methods configuration Or, you can choose to have the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant complete a typical configuration for you. Click Help for more information.	
Cancel Help) < Back Next >)	



13. In the Welcome to the Oracle Net Configuration Assistant screen, click Next.

14. Click Finish.

15. Click **Close** after the installation process is finished.

NOTE IN MSDTC, the session timeout is implemented by the registry setting ORAMTS_SESS_TXNTIMETOLIVE. The general rule for setting timeouts are:

MSDTC timeout (default 60) (IIS Setting) < ORAMTS_SESS_TXNTIMETOLIVE (set to 120) < distributed_lock_timeout (set to 180)</pre>

Use regedit to verify the setting as shown:

Comouter	A News	Trees	Data
HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT	(And the And	Type	Cata Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna A
HKEY_CURRENT_USER		REG_SZ	(value not set)
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE	MISHELP_TOOLS	REG_SZ	Dr./Oraclettg/product/112/0/client_1/MSHELP
>-24 BCD0000000	e NLS_LANG	REG_SZ	AMERICAN_AMERICA.WEBM5WINL252
- HARDWARE	OLEDB	REG_SZ	D:\Oracle11g\product\11.2.0\client_1\oledb\mesg
P-J SAM	0040	REG_SZ	D:\Oracle11g\product\11.2.0\client_1\oo4o\mesg
-B SECURITY	ORACLE_BUNDLE_NAME	REG_SZ	Enterprise
SOFTWARE	ORACLE_GROUP_NAME	REG_SZ	Oracle - OraClient11g_home1
p-JAMD	@ ORACLE_HOME	REG_SZ	D:\Oracle11g\product\11.2.0\client_1
ATI Technologies	ORACLE_HOME_KEY	REG_SZ	SOFTWARE\ORACLE\KEY_OraClient11g_home1
p - 🕌 Classes	CRACLE_HOME_NAME	REG_SZ	OraClient11g_home1
D- Clients	CRAMTS_CONN_POOL_TIMEOUT	REG_SZ	120
p 🕌 Intel	CRAMTS_CP_TRACE_DIR	REG_SZ	D:\Oracle11g\product\11.2.0\client_1\oramts\Trace
b distorgraph	ORAMTS_CP_TRACE_LEVEL	REG_SZ	0
Microsoft	ORAMTS_NET_CACHE_MAXFREE	REG_SZ	5
D DBC	ORAMTS_NET_CACHE_TIMEOUT	REG_SZ	120000
Policies	ORAMTS_OSCREDS_MATCH_LEVEL	REG_SZ	OS_AUTH_LOGIN
Rainbow Technologies	ORAMTS_SESS_TXINTIMETOLINE	REG_SZ	120
RegisteredApplications	e sqlpath	REG_SZ	D:\Oracle11g\product\11.2.0\client_1\dbs
p 🔐 Sonic			
TrendMicro			
p- Volatile			
a wowo432Node			
Adobe			
b - B Benbey			
Clever			
Classes			
p Clends			
b laterare			
Macromadia			
Marromedia			
Minneroft			

IMPORTANT You must install Patch 8 now.

See Also

Delete the Default Oracle Database (on page 201) Install and Configure Oracle Server Software (on page 197)

Index

.NET Framework • 43, 100 installing • 43, 100

3

3GB option • 113

Α

access permissions • 152 assigning for SQL Server 2000 • 152 AL16UTF16 • 17 AL32UTF8 • 17 anti-piracy statement • 180 application maintenance • 195 SmartMarine 3D • 195 assigning • 152 access permissions • 152 automatic startup • 61 Oracle Database Services • 61

В

backup locations • 67 sharing • 67 bi-lingual projects • 17 bulkloading • 102

С

catalog symbols • 139 changes • 10 current version • 10 changing • 173 database locations • 173 character sets • 17 client • 100 client software • 81 prerequisite software • 100 setting up • 81 COM+ applications • 74, 121, 195 command line installation • 35, 38 Command Wizard • 139 comments on documentation • 179 configuring • 60, 67, 74, 83, 84, 85, 106, 107, 113, 115, 121, 134, 141, 175, 195 databases • 141 for an integrated environment • 115

large model drawing generation • 113 MSDTC for client • 84 Name Generator Service • 74 network shares • 67 Oracle Client • 106, 107 Oracle Networking Components • 60 piping specificaiton remote access • 121, 195 piping specification remote access • 134 tasks • 175 Windows firewall • 85 Windows XP Professional SP2 • 83 consulting services • 179 creating • 62, 143, 145, 147, 150 Model databases • 145, 150 new Site database for Oracle • 147 new Site database for SQL Server • 143 Oracle streams administrator • 62 Oracle streams tablespace • 62 Reports databases • 145, 150 cultural conventions • 17 customer support • 179 customizing the software • 136, 137

D

database • 17, 39, 43 database server • 31 requirements • 31 database servers • 28 system requirements • 28 Database Wizard • 143, 147 character sets • 17 configuration • 39 creating Oracle databases • 147 creating SQL Server databases • 143 prerequisite software • 43 databases • 63, 64, 141, 143, 147, 173 changing locations • 173 creating • 141 creating for Oracle • 147 creating for SQL Server • 143 mapping • 173 monitoring • 63, 64 on linked servers • 141 upgrading version to version • 143 wizard • 141 date format • 17 decimal point • 17 defining • 176

workspaces • 176 disk i/o information • 63 disk partitioning • 19 disk space • 27 disk usage • 64 Distributed Transaction Coordinator • 83 documentation • 179 comments • 179 drawing batch server • 33 requirements • 33 drawing generation • 113 DTC • 83

Ε

Excel • 102

F

FEED • 11, 185 file server • 34 requirements • 34 file systems • 27 NTFS • 27 filters • 176 free hard disk space • 27

G

generating • 13 isometric drawings • 13 getting started • 173 Global Workshare • 62 global workshare configuration distribution server • 33 creating the Oracle streams administrator • 62 creating the Oracle streams tablespace • 62 requirements • 33 graphics cards • 21, 22, 185, 188

Η

hard drive space • 21, 22, 185, 188 hard drives • 27 hardware recommendations • 19 hardware requirements • 28 database servers • 28 heterogeneous environment • 17 homogeneous environment • 17

initializing • 57

Oracle Database • 57 installation • 10 What's New • 10 installing • 11, 26, 27, 35, 38, 39, 43, 55, 66, 71, 72, 81, 100, 101, 102, 106, 107, 109, 112, 116, 117, 118, 135, 136, 137, 139, 185, 191, 193 installing software • 27 .NET Framework • 43, 100 command line • 35, 38 database • 39 Intergraph Schema Component • 135 MDAC • 101 Microsoft Office • 102 Name Generator Service • 71, 72 optional software • 116, 117, 118, 137, 139 Oracle Client • 106, 107 Oracle Server • 55 prerequisite software • 43, 100 prerequisites • 26 service pack • 112 silent • 35. 38 SmartMarine 3D • 193 SmartPlant 3D • 11, 185 SmartPlant 3D Reference Data • 66 SmartPlant 3D workstation • 81, 109, 191 SmartPlant Schema Component • 136 XML 4.0 • 101 XML 6.0 • 101 integrating • 13, 15, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 136 third-party software • 13 with P&ID • 119 with PDS • 116, 117, 118 with SmartPlant Foundation • 15, 115 with SmartPlant Review • 136 interference checking (IFC) server • 33 requirements • 33 internationalization • 17

Κ

keyboard • 17 locale • 17

L

license server • 34 license server and name generator server • 34 requirements • 34 linked servers • 141 loading • 26 software • 26 locale boundary • 17

Μ

MDAC • 101 memory requirements • 21, 22, 30, 31, 33, 34, 185, 188 Microsoft Data Access Components • 101 **Microsoft Distributed Transaction** Coordinator • 83, 85 Microsoft Office • 102 Model databases • 145, 150 modelina • 13 modeling (detail design) workstation • 30 equipment • 13 requirements • 30 modifying • 195 SmartMarine 3D installation • 195 monitoring • 63, 64 databases • 63, 64 MSDTC • 83, 84, 85 configuring for client • 84

Ν

Name Generator Service • 71, 72, 74 Name Generator Service setup configuring • 74 installing • 71 installing% • 72 network MSDTC transactions • 84 network shares • 67 backups • 67 configuring for Oracle • 60 plant structure • 67 role template • 67 site server • 67 networking components • 60 new • 10 features • 10 requirements • 10 NLS LANG • 17

0

Office • 102 Office system language • 26 2000 • 102 XP • 102 operating system language • 26 optional software • 137, 139 installing • 137, 139 Oracle • 62 Oracle Client • 106, 107 Oracle Client services • 107 configuring • 106, 107 installing • 106 Oracle Database Services • 61 Oracle Server • 55, 57, 60 initialize • 57 installing • 55 net service • 60 networking components • 60 Oracle Streams administrator • 62 Oracle Streams tablespace • 62 creating streams administrator • 62 creating streams tablespace • 62 order of loading software • 26 overview of SmartPlant 3D • 11, 185 overviews • 208 SQL Server 2005 Client • 208

Ρ

P&ID integration • 116, 119 Part Definition Wizard • 13, 139 partitioning • 27 hard drives • 27 PDS • 116, 117, 118 PDS integration • 116, 118 data access • 117 exporting to SmartPlant 3D • 116, 118 referencing • 117 performing tasks • 173 piping specification remote access • 121, 134, 195 piracy information • 180 plant structures • 67 sharing • 67 prerequisite software • 43 installing on the database server • 43 prerequisites • 26 software • 26 processor speeds • 21, 22, 30, 31, 33, 34, 185, 188 programming software • 136, 137

R

recommendations • 19, 28 recommendations for database monitoring database servers • 28 hardware • 19 software • 19 regional settings • 17 registering • 15, 152 projects • 15

SQL Server 2000 • 152 with SmartPlant Foundation • 15 removina • 115 software • 115 repairing • 195 SmartMarine 3D installation • 195 Reports databases • 145, 150 requirements • 21, 22, 26, 28, 30, 31, 33, 34, 185, 188 database server • 31 database servers • 28 drawing batch server • 33 file server • 34 global workshare configuration distribution server • 33 hardware • 21, 22, 30, 31, 33, 34, 185, 188 installation • 21, 22, 185, 188 interference checking (IFC) server • 33 license server • 34 license server and name generator server • 34 modeling (detail design) workstation • 30 software • 26 system administrator workstation • 31 role templates • 67 sharing • 67

S

saving • 177 saving data in .VUE format • 136 sessions • 177 servers • 28 database • 28 service packs • 112 installing • 112 services for Oracle database • 61 session files • 175, 177 setting up • 63, 64, 66, 109, 191 databases • 63. 64 SmartPlant 3D Reference Data • 66 SmartPlant 3D workstation • 109, 191 setups • 27, 193 administrator • 27 client • 193 SmartMarine 3D • 193 workstation • 27, 193 silent installation • 35, 38 Site database • 143, 147 creating for Oracle • 147 creating for SQL Server • 143 site servers • 67 sharing • 67

SmartMarine 3D • 193, 195 SmartMarine 3D Tribon Interface application maintenance • 195 installation • 193 SmartPlant 3D • 11, 71, 72, 81, 116, 118, 119, 121, 134, 135, 136, 185, 191, 195 SmartPlant 3D Reference Data setup • 66 SmartPlant 3D Symbol/Part Definition Wizard • 13, 139 Name Generator Service installation • 71, 72 overview • 11, 185 P&ID integration • 116, 119, 121, 134, 195 PDS integration • 116, 118 SmartPlant Review integration • 135, 136 viewing model data • 135 workstation installation • 81, 109, 191 SmartPlant Foundation • 15 SmartPlant integration • 15, 115, 136 configuring • 115 SmartPlant Schema Component • 136 software • 19 recommendations • 19 Solid Edge • 115 SQL Server • 141 SQL Server 2000 • 152 SQL Server 2005 Client • 208 overview • 208 starting • 85, 107 starting the software • 173, 175 Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC) • 85 Oracle Client services • 107 support for customers • 179 Symbol/Part Definition Wizard • 13, 139 system administrator workstation • 31 requirements • 31 system language for non-English locales • 26 system requirements • 28 database servers • 28

Т

task setup • 175 technical support • 179 templates • 143, 147, 175 Oracle databases • 147 session files • 175 SQL Server databases • 143
U

Unicode • 17 uninstalling • 115 software • 115 Solid Edge • 115 upgrading • 143 version to version • 143 user environments • 175

V

VB projects • 102 verifying • 61, 85, 107 verifying,Oracle Client services • 107 startup of Microsoft Dictributed Transaction Coordinator • 85 startup of Oracle Database Services • 61 version to version upgrading • 143 viewing • 135 3D model data • 135

W

```
What's New • 10
Installation • 10
Windows Firewall • 85
Windows XP • 85
Windows XP Professional • 83
configure the firewall • 85
Service Pack 2 • 83
wizards • 139
```

Х

XML 4.0 • 101 XML 6.0 • 101